



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

HD WIDENER



Hw SJBR 5

30.23.25

5273,10



THE GIFT OF  
ELIZA WENTWORTH HAVEN,  
OF PORTSMOUTH, N. H.

From the Library of her late Husband,  
NATHANIEL APPLETON HAVEN, JR.,  
(Class of 1807.)

Received 25 April, 1857.









# LATIN SYNTAX

CHIEFLY FROM THE GERMAN OF

C. G. ZUMPT.

---

BY CHARLES BECK,

PROFESSOR OF LATIN IN HARVARD UNIVERSITY.

---

BOSTON:

CHARLES C. LITTLE AND JAMES BROWN.

1838.



5273, 10

1857. April. 25.

Gilt.

Mrs. Nathaniel A. Haven, jr.

of Portsmouth, N. H.

Entered according to Act of Congress, in the year 1838, by CHARLES C. LITTLE AND JAMES BROWN, in the Clerk's Office of the District Court of the District of Massachusetts.

CAMBRIDGE PRESS:

METCALF, TORRY, AND BALLOU.

## P R E F A C E .

---

BEING informed, a few months ago, that Zumpt's Latin Grammar was out of print, the editor of the present work improved the opportunity for making such alterations and additions to the Syntax of the original as would obviate some, at least, of the objections made to the book, and enhance its usefulness. The additions to the rules are chiefly derived from the larger grammar of the same author, and those to the examples from various sources, but principally from the grammar of Ramshorn, a work unsurpassed in the abundance and critical selection of its materials.

Much might be said in favor of a more rational mode of teaching the ancient languages, by making the study of grammar not merely a task of memory, but an exercise of the reasoning powers; but aware how much more useful it is to act than to talk, the editor has long since abandoned the hope of accomplishing anything by setting forth fine theories, and applied himself exclusively to the task of carrying into execution the method which experience and reflection have recommended to him.

The editor would do injustice to his own feelings, were he to omit making his acknowledgment for some useful suggestions and for his aid in correcting the press, to his fellow instructor, Mr. Mason.

CHARLES BECK. ♪

Cambridge, Nov. 7, 1838.

# CONTENTS.

---

## *Syntax.*

SECTION I.	Connexion of Subject and Predicate . . .	1
------------	--	---

## *Use of Cases.*

SECTION II.	Nominative Case . . . . .	7
SECTION III.	Accusative Case . . . . .	9
SECTION IV.	Dative Case . . . . .	17
SECTION V.	Genitive Case . . . . .	27
SECTION VI.	Ablative Case . . . . .	38
SECTION VII.	Vocative Case . . . . .	50

## *Use of Adjectives.*

SECTION VIII.	. . . . .	51
---------------	-----------	----

## *Use of Pronouns.*

SECTION IX.	. . . . .	55
-------------	-----------	----

## *Use of Tenses.*

SECTION X.	. . . . .	59
------------	-----------	----

## *Use of Moods.*

SECTION XI.	Indicative Mood . . . . .	69
SECTION XII.	Subjunctive Mood . . . . .	71

SECTION XIII. Imperative Mood . . . . .	95
SECTION XIV. Infinitive Mood . . . . .	97

*Use of Participles.*

SECTION XV. . . . .	115
---------------------	-----

*Use of Gerunds.*

SECTION XVI. . . . .	126
----------------------	-----

*Use of Supines.*

SECTION XVII. . . . .	130
-----------------------	-----

*First Appendix.*

Of the Division of Syllables . . . . .	133
--	-----

*Second Appendix.*

Of the Roman Calendar . . . . .	135
---------------------------------	-----

*Index.*

# **S Y N T A X.**



# SYNTAX.

---

## SECTION I.

### *Connexion of Subject and Predicate.*

1. SYNTAX treats of the construction of propositions and their connexion; or of the use of cases, tenses, and moods.

2. Every proposition consists at least of two parts, the subject and predicate.

3. The subject of a proposition is that of which something is affirmed; the predicate is that which is affirmed of the subject, as, præceptor docet; discipuli discunt. Præceptor and discipuli are the subjects; docet and discunt the predicates.

4. The subject is, as to its form, either a substantive, or an adjective, or pronoun in the stead of a substantive, or an indeclinable part of speech, or a sentence. If an indeclinable part of speech or a sentence be the subject, they are considered and treated as substantives of the neuter gender.

*Aves* volant.

Erubescunt *pudici* etiam impudica loqui.

*Quidquid* honestum est, *idem* est utile.

Lacrimas hoc mihi *pæne* movet.

*Scire* tuum nihil est.

Dulce est *pro patria* mori.

NOTE 1. The subject is not always expressed, especially when the termination of the verb indicates it, as *dixi*; *audivistis*.

NOTE 2. An adjective in the singular is seldom the subject; it is better to say homo probus neminem lædit, than probus neminem lædit. Adjectives in the plural are more frequently used as subjects, yet not without some limitation; it is better to say multi viri docti, than multi docti. Res with an adjective is generally preferred to the neuter of the adjective alone: res facillimæ sæpe difficillimæ sunt ad inveniendum, instead of facillima sæpe difficillima sunt ad inveniendum.



5. The predicate is, as to its form, either a verb, or the auxiliary verb *esse*, with a noun (substantive or adjective), participle, or adjective pronoun.

6. If the predicate is a verb, it agrees with the subject in number; as, *arbor viret; arbores virent*. If it is the auxiliary verb *esse*, with an adjective, participle, or adjective pronoun, *esse* agrees in number, and the adjective parts of speech in number and gender also with the subject, as *ille puer est modestus; hi libri sunt mei; hæc prata sunt viridissima*. If a substantive with *esse* forms the predicate, the substantive is not affected in its number and gender by the subject, as, *captivi militum præda fuerunt; amicitia vinculum quoddam est hominum inter se*. It is only when there is a double form of a substantive, the one for the masculine, the other for the feminine, as *rex, regina; magister, magistra; inventor, inventrix; corruptor, corruptrix; præceptor, præcepatrix*, that the gender of the substantive can follow that of the subject, as,

*Licentia rerum corruptrix est morum.*

*Stilus optimus est dicendi effector et magister.*

The masculine rather than the feminine is used with the neuter, as *tempus vitæ magister est*. In epicene nouns the gender of the termination is followed, as,

*Aquila volucrum regina, fida ministra Jovis.*

NOTE 1. Collective nouns, that is, nouns which in the singular signify a number of individuals, have, in poetry, sometimes, a plural verb, but not in prose, except when the connexion between subject and predicate is obscured by the interposition of intermediate clauses, or when after one verb in the singular, the verb of the following clause in the plural refers to the plural concrete implied in the collective noun, as,

*Cuneus is hostium, qui in confertos circa ducem impetum fecerat, ut exanimem labentem ex equo Scipionem vidit, alacres gaudio cum clamore per totam aciem nunciantes discurrunt.*

*Ita omnium populorum juvenus Antium contracta ibi castris positus hostem opperiebantur.*

*Jam ne nocte quidem turba ex eo loco dilabebatur, refracturosque carcerem minabantur.*

From the rule that the verb should be in the singular after a collective noun, there is but one exception in Livy (2, 5: *desectam segetem magna vis hominum immissa corribus fudere in Tiberim*), and none in Cicero.

NOTE 2. The verb in the plural is frequently used after *uterque*, *quisque*, (especially *pro se quisque*), *pars-pars* with the signification of *alii-alii*, *alius alium*, and *alter alterum*.

*Eodem die uterque eorum ex castris stativis exercitum educunt.*

*Cetera multitudo decimus quisque ad supplicium lecti.*

*Pro se quisque dextram ejus amplexi grates habebant velut præsenti deo.*

*Pars navium haustæ sunt, plures ejectæ.*

*Alius alium, ut prælium incipiant, circumspectant.*

NOTE 3. There are some apparent or real exceptions from the rule, that the adjective part of speech should agree in gender with its substantive. Sometimes the adjective is used in the neuter, having in fact become a noun, as *triste* lupus stabulis; *varium* et *mutabile* semper femina; omnium rerum mors est *extremum*. Sometimes, when substantives by metaphor signify men, the adjective follows the gender of the persons meant, as,

*Capita conjurationis ejus quæstione ab consulibus ex senatus consulto habita virgis cæsi ac securi percussi sunt.*

*Quod unquam hujusmodi monstrum aut prodigium audivimus aut vidimus, qui cum reo transigat, post cum accusatore decidat.*

After *millia* the adjective part of speech sometimes follows the gender of the persons.

*Duo millia Tyrriorum crucibus affixi per ingens litoris spatium penderunt.*

*Ad septem millia hominum in naves impositos præter oram Etrusci maris Neapolim transmisit.*

NOTE 4. If the substantive of the subject is in a different number from that of the predicate, the verb *esse*, and verbs signifying to be called, to be considered, take the number of the subject.

*Quæ omnia sine dubio vitæ sunt eversio.*

*Præcipuum robur Rhenum juxta octo legiones erant.*

Many instances, however, and perhaps more, occur where these verbs agree with the substantive of the predicate.

*Aude nunc, o furia, de tuo consulatu dicere, cujus fuit initium ludi compitalitii.*

*Amantium iræ amoris integratio est.*

*Pars non minima triumphi est victimæ præcedentes.*

7. Adjectives, participles, or adjective pronouns, immediately connected with a substantive, so as to constitute with it one idea, agree with it in number, gender, and case.

*Huic modesto puero credo.*

*Hanc modestam virginem diligo.*

8. When two substantives are thus immediately connected, it is called an *apposition*, in which the one word is explained or limited by the other, as oppidum Pæstum, arbor laurus, Taurus mons, lupus piscis, Socrates vir sapientissimus. The substantive apposed agrees in case with the substantive which is to be explained, as *Socratem sapientissimum virum* Athenienses interfecerunt. The number and gender may be different, as, urbs Athenæ, pisces signum (the fishes, a constellation); formosum pastor Corydon ardebat *Alexin, delicias domini*. When the substantive apposed has two genders, that is chosen, which corresponds to the gender of the substantive to be explained. The predicate, also, follows the substantive which is to be explained, as, *Tulliola, deliciolæ nostræ, tuum munusculum flagitat*; cum duo fulmina nostri imperii subito in Hispania, *Cn. et P. Scipiones extincti* occidissent, for duo fulmina, though placed first, is but apposition. But when plural names of places are explained by the apposition urbs, oppidum, civitas, the predicate generally agrees with these more familiar words, as, *Volsinii, oppidum Tuscorum opulentissimum, concrematum est fulmine*.

O vitæ *philosophia* dux, o virtutis *indagatrix expultrixque* vitiorum.

Pythagoras velut *genitricem* virtutum *frugalitatem* omnibus ingerebat.

9. A relative or demonstrative pronoun, referring to a noun in the same or another sentence, agrees with the noun in gender and number.

*Hæc* est nobilis ad Trasimenum *pugna*.

Non solum *ea* perspicis, *quæ* geruntur, *quæque* jam gesta sunt; sed etiam, *qui cursus* rerum, *qui exitus* futurus sit.

NOTE 1. If the verb itself, or the sentence is referred to, it is considered as a substantive of the neuter gender, and in this case, instead of quod, *id quod* is generally used.

Timoleon, *id quod* difficilius putatur, multo sapientius tulit secundam quam adversam fortunam.

Dicam tibi non tam doctus quam, *id quod* est majus, expertus.

NOTE 2. If a substantive in one sentence or the sentence itself (considered, of course, as a substantive of the neuter gender) is explained by another substantive with esse, or the verbs which signify

to call, (*dicere, vocare, appellare, nominare*, etc.), the pronouns ought, according to the above rule, to agree in number and gender with the substantive to which they refer; and there are, indeed, some instances.

*Cohibere motus animi turbatos, quos Græci πᾶσιν nominant.*

*Darius ad eum locum, quem Amanicas pylas vocant, pervenit.*

*Spem in discordia Romana ponentes, eam impedimentum delectui fore.*

This is, nevertheless, not to be considered the usage of the Latin language; for, in the majority of cases, the pronoun agrees with the following explaining substantive, and the regular construction is to be considered the exception.

*Levis est animi lucem, splendoremque fugientis justam gloriam, qui est fructus veræ virtutis honestissimus, repudiare.*

*Thebæ, quod Bæotiæ caput est.*

*Animal plenum rationis et consilii, quem vocamus hominem.*

*Domicilia conjuncta, quas urbes dicimus, moenibus sepserunt.*

*Extat ejus peroratio, qui epilogus dicitur.*

*Negat Epicurus (hoc enim vestrum lumen est) quemquam, qui honeste non vivat, jucunde posse vivere.*

*Idem velle et idem nolle, ea demum firma amicitia est.*

10. When the subject of a proposition consists of several substantives in the singular, the predicate is always in the plural, if the substantives denote living beings, and especially persons; if they denote things without life, the singular or plural may be used; if one of the substantives should be a plural, the predicate must be in the plural.

*Antonius et Octavianus vicerunt Brutum et Cassium.*

*Cum tempus necessitasque postulat, decertandum manu est, et mors servituti turpitudinique anteponenda.*

*Beneficium et gratia homines inter se conjungunt.*

*Vita, mors, divitiæ, paupertas omnes homines vehementissime permovent.*

NOTE 1. When the subject consists of two or more persons, it is to be considered as an exception, if the predicate is in the singular.

*Nam Leontinus Gorgias, Thrasy-machus Chalcedonius, Protagoras Abderites, Prodicus Ceus, Hippias Eleus in honore magno fuit.*

*Et tamen Dionysius noster, qui est nobiscum, et Nicias Couus non rebatur oppidum esse Piræea.*

*Dixit hoc apud vos Zosippus et Ismenias, homines nobilissimi.*

In poets, and particularly in Horace, this use of the singular is frequent.

NOTE 2. When the two substantives, denoting persons, are connected by the disjunctive conjunction *aut*, the verb may be in the singular or plural, as, *si Socrates aut Antisthenes diceret*; and, *nec quemquam hoc errore duci oportet, ut, si quid Socrates aut Aristippus contra morem consuetudinemque civium fecerint locutivæ sint*, idem sibi arbitretur licere. When the substantives of the subject are connected by *aut* — *aut*, the verb is in the singular, as, *nec enim nunc primum aut Brutus aut Cassius salutem libertatemque patriæ legem sanctissimam et morem optimum judicavit*; when by *nec* — *nec*, the verb is generally in the singular, sometimes in the plural, as, *erant enim* (acclamations), *quibus nec senatus gloriari nec princeps possent*. When the two subjects are not two substantives, but pronouns of the first and second person, or a noun with a pronoun, the plural seems to be indispensable, as, *hæc neque ego neque tu fecimus*; *quod in decemviris neque ego neque Cæsar habiti essemus*.

NOTE 3. When the subject is a substantive in the singular, connected by *cum* with another substantive in the singular or plural, the verb ought to be in the singular, but is, more frequently, in the plural.

*Tu ipse cum Sexto scire velim, quid cogites.*

*Ipsæ dux cum aliquot principibus capiuntur.*

*Ejus consilio Demosthenes cum ceteris, qui bene de re publica mereri videbantur, populiscito in exilium erant expulsi.*

11. With respect to the gender of adjectives, participles, or pronouns, when they refer to several substantives:

When the substantives are of the *same* gender, the adjective, participle, or adjective pronoun takes this gender. When they are of *different* genders, and denote persons, the adjective, &c. is of the masculine gender rather than the feminine. In the case of things without life and of different genders, the neuter is used; and if some of them are with and some without life, either the neuter or the gender of the thing with life. The rule is the same whether the adjective part of speech be a part of the predicate, or immediately connected with the subject.

*Jam pridem pater mihi et mater mortui sunt.*

*Ninus et Semiramis, qui condiderunt Babylona.*

*Labor voluptasque, dissimilia natura, societate quadam inter se juncta sunt.*

*Jane, fac æternos pacem pacisque ministros.*

*Propter summam et doctoris auctoritatem et urbem, quorum alter te scientia augere potest, altera exemplis.*

*C. Duilius delectabatur a cœna rediens crebro funali et tibicine, quæ sibi nullo exemplo privatus sumserat.*

It is still more common, especially where the nouns denote persons and things without life, to join the adjective, &c. to one of the nouns, and leave it to be supplied with the others.

L. Brutus *exulem* et regem ipsum et liberos ejus et gentem Tarquiniorum esse jussit.

Thrasybulus *contemptus* est a tyrannis atque ejus solitudo.

Hominis utilitati agri *omnes* et maria parent.

12. When the personal pronouns *ego*, *tu*, *nos*, *vos*, united with one or more nouns, are the subject, the predicate follows the first person in preference to the second, and the second in preference to the third.

Si *tu* et Tullia *valetis*, *ego* et suavissimus Cicero *valemus*.

## USE OF CASES.

### SECTION II.

#### *Nominative Case.*

13. The subject of a proposition is in the nominative. The substantive or adjective part of speech of the predicate, is in the nominative, only when it is joined to the subject by the verb *esse* to be, and similar verbs, *fieri*, *evadere*, *existere*, *manere*, *apparere*, *nasci*; the passives signifying to be named, *appellari*, *dici*, *inscribi*, *nominari*, *perhiberi*, *salutari*, *usurpari*, *vocari*; passives denoting to be elected or appointed, *capi*, *creari*, *declarari*, *designari*, *eligi*, *renunciari*; and passives denoting to be esteemed, *censeri*, *credi*, *deprehendi*, *existimari*, *haberi*, *judicari*, *numerari*, *putari*, *reperiri*, *videri*.

Servus cum manu mittitur, *fit* libertinus,

M. Brutus per se homo magnus *evaserat*.

Galba medius inter Neronem et Othonem imperator *extitit*.

Scythæ perpetuo ab alieno imperio aut intacti aut invicti *mansere*.

Rhetorica apud Romanos sero recepta est; paullatim et ipsa utilis honestaque *apparuit*.

Qui *natus est* infelix, vitam tristem decurrit.

Qui erant cum Aristotele, Peripatetici *dicti sunt*, quia disputabant inambulantes in Lyceo.

De amicitia eo libro dictum est, qui *inscribitur* Lælius.

Princeps in senatu tertium *lectus est* P. Scipio Africanus.

Servius Tullius magno consensu rex *est declaratus*.

Homines facilius in timore benigni, quam in victoria grati *reperiuntur*.

Socrates *est* omnium sapientissimus oraculo Apollinis *judicatus*.

14. The personal pronouns *ego, tu, ille, nos, vos, illi*, when they are the subjects of the verb, are expressed for the sake of contrast or emphasis; but otherwise they are indicated by the termination of the tense.

*Ego* reges ejeci, *vos* tyrannos introducitis; *ego* libertatem, quæ non erat, *peperi*, *vos* partam servare non vultis.

NOTE 1. In a single case, the construction of the accusative with the infinitive (see § 14.), the subject is not in the nominative but in the accusative; and in that case the predicate, which, with the verbs mentioned above, stands in the nominative, likewise is in the accusative.

NOTE 2. *Videri* is used as a personal verb; the instances, in which it is used impersonally, are to be considered as exceptions.

Mihi *videtur* acerba semper et immatura mors eorum, qui immortale aliquid parant.

Non mihi *videtur* ad bene vivendum satis posse virtutem.

NOTE 3. The passive verbs, signifying to be said (*dici, tradi, ferri, prodi, perhiberi*) are likewise used personally. The impersonal use is very rare, with the exception of the perfect tense.

Tyndaridæ fratres non modo adjutores in præliis victoriæ populi Romani, sed etiam nuncii fuisse *perhibentur*.

*Dicitur* eo tempore matrem Pausaniæ vixisse, eamque jam magnam natu, postquam de scelere filii comperit, in primis ad filium claudendum lapidem ad introitum ædis attulisse.

NOTE 4. The passives *audiri* and *nunciari* are, not so exclusively but still frequently, used personally.

Jam Cæsar a Gergovia discessisse *audiebatur*.  
Oppugnata domus C: Cæsar *nunciabatur*.

### SECTION III.

#### *Accusative Case.*

15. The accusative is the case of the object, and is therefore joined to all transitive verbs, whether active or dependent, to express the object of the action; as, *pater amat (tuetur) filium*.

If the verb is active, the same proposition may be expressed, without any change of sense, in the passive voice, by the accusative of the object being made the nominative of the subject, as, *filius amatur a patre*.

NOTE 1. Although according to this rule, an intransitive or neuter verb cannot govern an accusative, there are many intransitive verbs which, when compounded with certain prepositions, receive a transitive meaning. These prepositions are, *ad, ante, circum, in, inter, ob, per, præ, præter, sub, super, supra, trans*, and also *a, cum, e*. Such verbs are *ingredi, invadere, decurrere, percurrere*, and many compounds of *ire, inire, coire, abire, præterire, transire, subire*. The active verbs of this class form a complete passive, which intransitive verbs do not.

Pythagoras et Ægyptum lustravit et Persarum magos adiit.

Veneris stella, solem *antecurrens* et oriens ante lucem, Lucifer appellatur.

Dies et noctes omnia nos undique fata *circumstant*.

Romanorum duces, mare *ingredientes*, immolare hostiam fluctibus consueverunt.

Samnites descendunt in planitiem, quæ Capuam Tifataque *interjacet*.

Diligentissime semper illum diem et illud munus solitus eras *obire*.

Plato Ægyptum *peragravit*.

Cappadocia intus habet coloniam Claudii Cæsaris Archelaidem, quam *præfuit* Halys.

Sum multum in Epicuri hortis, quos modo *præteribamus*.

Epaminondas non recusavit, quominus legis pœnam *subiret*.

Arethusa fluctus *subterlabitur*.

Romani ruinas muri *supervadebant*.

Crassus Euphratem nulla belli causa transire voluit.

Scipio colloquium haud *abnuît*.



Non eos solum *convenire* aveo, quos ipse cognovi, sed illos etiam, de quibus audiivi et legi.

Historia non debet *egredi* veritatem.

NOTE 2. Some intransitive verbs are connected with an accusative, because they have received a transitive signification, as, horreo tenebras, fastidio preces or mores alicujus, doleo vicem tuam, gemo, lacrimo, ploro casum hunc, ludo aliquem (to make sport of one), ludo bonum civem (to act), lugeo victoriam, maneo hostium adventum, properavit or festinavit mortem. To this class belong the verbs which signify to smell and taste of something, as, olet unguenta, piscis ipsum mare sapit, uva picem resipiens; and metaphorically, olet peregrinum, redolet antiquitatem.

NOTE 3. The accusative is sometimes connected with an intransitive verb, when the substantive is of the same root with the verb, or at least of a corresponding signification; in such cases an adjective is usually added, as vitam jucundam vivere, longam viam ire, gravem pugnam (prælium) pugnare, alterius gaudium gaudere, risum Sardonium ridere, similem ludum ludere, servitutem servire durissimam, somnium somniare.

NOTE 4. The connexion of the neuter of pronouns in the accusative with intransitive verbs is to be noticed, as, hoc lætor, hoc non dubito, hoc pugno, id stomachor.

Dolores autem nunquam vim tantam habent, ut non plus habeat sapiens, *quod* gaudeat, quam *quod* angatur.

16. The impersonal verbs, which express various feelings, *piget*, *pudet*, *pœnitet*, *tædet*, *miseret*, *veritum est*, take an accusative of the person affected after them, with a genitive of the object which excites the feeling. See § 5.

*Sapientiam* nunquam *sui* pœnitet.

*Me civitatis morum* piget tædetque.

Sunt homines, quos *libidinis infamiæque suæ* neque *pudeat* neque *tædeat*.

Nunquam *Atticum suscepti negotii pertæsum est*.

*Miseret te aliorum*; *tui* nec *miseret* nec *pudet*.

Adolescentem vidi miserum, et *me ejus miseritum est*.

Cyrenaici, quos non *est veritum* in voluptate summum bonum ponere.

17. *Decet* and its compounds, *condecet*, *dedecet*, and *indecet*, likewise govern an accusative, but they differ from the preceding verbs in this, that they may have a subject in the nominative, though not a person.

Candida pax homines, trux *decet* ira feras.

Oratorem irasci minime *decet*, simulare non *dedecet*.

Juvenes confusa quædam et quasi turbata non *indecent*.

**NOTE.** The following verbs, used impersonally, are joined to the accusative according to their original construction; *juvat*, *delectat*, to be pleased; *fallit*, *fugit*, *præterit*, to be ignorant of, not to be aware.

*Te hilari animo esse valde me juvat.*

*Nos, nisi me fallit, jacebimus.*

*Non me fugit vetera exempla pro fictis fabulis jam haberi.*

*Neminem vestrum præterit omnem utilitatem opportunitatemque Siciliae consistere in re frumentaria maxime.*

18. Verbs of teaching (*doceo* and its compounds *edocceo*, *dedocceo*) and concealing (*celo*) have two accusatives of the object, one of the thing, another of the person.

*Antigonus iter, quod habebat adversus Eumenem, omnes celabat.*

*Fortuna victos quoque belli artem docet.*

*Catilina juventutem, quam illexerat, multis modis mala facinora edocebat.*

*Democritus nunquam putavisset aliquid esse minimum, si a Polyæno geometriam discere maluisset, quam illam etiam ipsum dedocere.*

**NOTE 1.** In changing the construction to the passive the accusative of the person becomes the nominative. All these verbs *may* be construed with the accusative of the thing, especially the neuter of a pronoun, in the passive. Latinæ legiones longa societate *militiam Romanam* edoctæ. *Omnes belli artes edoctus.* They are more frequently used with the preposition *de*; as, *celatus sum a te de hac re*, and *doceo* with the ablative alone.

*Non est profecto de illo veneno celata mater.*

*Credo celatum esse Cassium de Sulla uno.*

*D. Brutus fuit homo et Græcis doctus literis et Latinis.*

*Cicero per legatos cuncta edoctus.*

*Sub Cn. Scipionis disciplina omnes militiæ artes edoctus fuerat.*

**NOTE 2.** Some verbs compounded with *trans*, *transduco*, *transjicio*, *transmitto*, take a double accusative on account of the omission of the preposition, which, however, is frequently added.

*Hannibal nonaginta millia peditum, duodecim millia equitum Iberum transduxit.*

*Agesilaus Hellespontum copias trajecit.*

*Cæsar multitudinem hominum trans Rhenum in Galliam transduxit.*

19. The verbs which denote demanding, entreating, inquiring (*posco*, *reposco*, *postulo*, *flagito*; *oro*, *quæso*, *rogo*; *consulo*, *interrogo*, *percontor*) also admit a double accusa-

tive, but not exclusively; since those of demanding and entreating also take an ablative of the person with *ab* and *de*; those of inquiring, an ablative of the thing with *de*; e. gr. *percontari aliquem de re*. *Peto*, in the sense of entreating, has always an ablative of the person with *ab*; *quæro*, I ask, with *ab*, *de*, and *ex*.

*Nulla salus bello, pacem te poscimus omnes.*

*Legati Ennenses ad Verrem adeunt, eumque simulacrum Cereris et Victoris repossunt.*

*Pusionem quandam interrogat Socrates quædam Geometrica.*

*Quod me de faciendis versibus rogas, incredibile est, quam egeam tempore.*

*Ego Masinissam de suo regno, ille me de nostra re publica percontatus est.*

*Solebat ex me Deiotarus percontari nostri augurii disciplinam.*

*Quærit ex solo ea, quæ in conventu dixerat.*

*Eadem secreto ab aliis quærit.*

NOTE. The double accusative is used especially when the thing is indefinitely expressed by the neuter of a pronoun.

*Hoc te vehementer, mi Cornifici, rogo.*

*Illud te oro, ut in numero tuo diligentissimus sis.*

*Hæc sunt illa, quæ me ludens flagitabat.*

20. Verbs of naming, esteeming, creating, choosing, showing, are used in the active with two accusatives, of the object and the predicate, and in the passive with two nominatives, of the subject and predicate. Such verbs are: *dicere*, *vocare*, *appellare*, *nominare*; *judicare*, *existimare*, *putare*, *habere*, (*arbitrari*), also *reperire* and *invenire*; *facere*, (*pass. fieri*), *reddere*, *creare*, *deligere*, *designare*, *declarare*; *se præbere*, *se præstare*, *se exhibere*.

*Romulus urbem, quam condidit, Romam vocavit.*

*Ciceronem universus populus consulem declaravit.*

*Adversus Hannibalem Fabius Romæ consul creatus est.*

*Scytharum gens antiquissima semper habita est.*

*Iram bene Ennius initium dixit insanis.*

*Cn. Pompeius se auctorem meæ salutis exhibuit.*

*Bene de me meritis gratum me præbeo.*

NOTE. According to this *facio te certiore*, I inform you; but the fact concerning which information is given, is put in the genitive or ablative with *de*.

*Certiozem me sui consilii fecit.*

*Eum de rebus gestis certiozem faciunt.*

21. The accusative is used to express the extent of time and space; therefore in answer to the questions, *how far? how long? how broad? how deep? how thick?* and, of continuance of time, *how long?* *Nunquam pedem a me discessit; cogitationem sobrii hominis punctum temporis suscipe; a recta conscientia non transversum unguem oportet discedere; fossa duos pedes lata, or longa; tres annos mecum habitavit, or per tres annos.*

Campus Marathon ab Athenis decem millia passuum abest.

Quædam bestiolæ unum tantum diem vivunt.

Decem annos Troja a Græcis oppugnata est.

Lacrimans in carcere mater dies noctesque assidebat.

NOTE 1. The ablative is more rarely used to express duration, and by later writers only to express distance. But when the place where something happens is described by the mention of its distance from another place, the ablative is used; and in this connexion, the strange transposition of *ab* is to be noticed, as if the ablative were governed by it.

Scriptum est a Posidonio triginta annis vixisse Panætium, posteaquam libros de officiis edidisset.

Vixit annis undetriginta.

Gens Menisminorum abest ab Oceano dierum itinere viginti.

Ab millibus passuum minus duobus castra posuerunt.

NOTE 2. *Old*, applied to the years of human life, is rendered in Latin by *natus* with an accusative of the time.

Decessit Alexander mensem unum annos tres et triginta natus.

22. The names of towns, and often of the smaller islands, are put in the accusative, when in answer to the question *whither?* without *in* or *ad*, which are required with the names of countries.

Juvenes Romani Athenas studiorum causa proficiscebantur.

23. The rest of the construction of the names of cities is this: if they denote the place *whence*, they are in the ablative; if the place *where*, the singulars of the first and second declension are put in the genitive; all plurals and nouns of the other declensions in the ablative.

*Demaratus quidam Tarquinius Corintho fugit.*

*Dionysius tyrannus Syracusis expulsus Corinthi pueros docebat.*

*Romæ consules, Athenis archontes, Carthagine suffetes, sive iudices, quotannis creabantur.*

NOTE 1. It is to be considered an exception when on the one hand names of countries are used without, and on the other names of towns with, the prepositions *in*, *ab*, *ex*; of these *ab* occurs most frequently.

*Legati ab Ardea Romam venerunt.*

*Corpus Augusti decuriones municipiorum a Nola Bovillas usque deportarunt; a Bovillis equester ordo susceptus, ubique intulit.*

NOTE 2. But it is not to be considered as an irregularity, when the preposition *ad*, in the signification of *near*, *in the neighborhood of*, is used.

*Adolescentulus miles profectus sum ad Capuam, quintoque anno post ad Tarentum quæstor.*

*Ad me legati venerunt in castra ad Iconium.*

*Rex Attalus P. Africano donâ usque ad Numantiam misit ex Asia.*

NOTE 3. With regard to islands, not only those which have a town of the same name, as *Corcyra*, *Delos*, *Rhodus*, *Samos*, but also others are construed like the names of towns.

*Pompeius Africam exploravit; inde Sardiniam cum classe venit.*

*Proditum est memoriæ ac literis Latonam ex longo errore confugisse Delon, atque ibi Apollinem Dianamque peperisse.*

*Cæsar's milites ogebantur Corcyra atque Acarnania pabulum supportare.*

*Dolabella Delo proficiscitur.*

*Conon plurimum Cypri vixit, Iphicrates in Thracia, Timotheus Lesbi, Chares in Sigeo.*

NOTE 4. The words *urbs*, *oppidum*, *locus*, when in apposition to names of towns, as the place where anything occurs, may be in the ablative, even without *in*.

*Archias Antiochiæ natus est, celebri quondam urbe et copiosa.*

*Vespasianus Corinthi, Achaïæ urbe, certos nuntios accepit de interitu Galbæ.*

When these words, with *in*, precede the name, the latter may be in the ablative instead of the genitive.

*In oppido Adrumeto agitat.*

The addition of an adjective part of speech to the name of a town does not affect the case.

Capuam veni eo ipso die, quo tu *Teano Sidicino* es profectus.

Alter filius *Teani Apuli* apud matrem educatus est.

Numa Pompilius *Curibus Sabinis* habitabat.

NOTE 5. *Domus* and *rus*, like names of towns, are used with verbs of motion without prepositions, *domum*, (or *domos*, of more than one) home; *rus*, into the country; *domo* and *rure*, from home, from the country; *domi* and *ruri*, (which is more common than *rure*) at home, in the country. *Domi* also takes the genitives *meæ*, *tuæ*, *sua*, *nostræ*, *vestræ*, and *alienæ*. If any other adjective is joined, it is better to use a preposition. If a genitive be added, *domi* or *in domo* is used. *Domum* and *domo*, also, take, yet not exclusively, the above pronouns without a preposition; and *domum* is frequently used with a genitive without the preposition *in* or *ad*.

Thracæ navibus se committere non ausi *domos* dilapsi sunt.

Paulus Æmilius nihil *domum suam* præter memoriam nominis sempiternam detulit.

Ego *rus* ibo, atque ibi manebo.

Lælius et Scipio *rus* ex urbe tamquam e vinculis evolabant.

Veni consulis *Antonii domum* sæpe salutandi causa.

Princeps *Academiæ Philo* cum *Atheniensium* optimatibus Mithridatico bello *domo* profugit, *Romamque* venit.

Cum *Tullius rure* redierit, mittam eum ad te.

*Manlius Titum* filium, qui postea est *Torquatus* appellatus, *ruri* habitare jussit.

Cum *Verre* postea in gratiam redisti, *domi ejus* aliquoties fuisti.

Hæc eadem locutus sum *domi meæ*.

Nonne mavis sine periculo *domi tuæ* esse quam cum periculo *alienæ*.

Mihi quidem naturam animi intuenti multo difficilior occurrit cogitatio, qualis animus in corpore sit, tanquam *alienæ domi*, quam qualis, cum exierit.

*In domo Cæsaris* *Clodius* aliquando unus vir fuit.

*Domi Cæsaris* *Clodius* deprehensus est.

Quod cum audivisset adolescens, cum prima luce *Pomponii domum* venisse dicitur.

NOTE 6. The words *humus*, *bellum*, and *militia* are, in part, used in a similar manner; namely, in the genitive, in answer to the question where? as *humī* on the ground; and *belli* and *militiæ* in connexion with *domi*; as, *belli domique*, or *domi bellicæ*, and *domi militiæque*. But *hello* in war, also occurs.

*A Romanis* nihil *belli domique* nisi auspiciato gerebatur.

*Bonis consiliis* sæpe constituta est *salus civitatis* aut *belli* aut *domi*.

*Crassi* et *Cæsaris* virtus fuerat *domi militiæque* cognita.

Nihil *domi*, nihil *militiæ* per magistratus geritur sine augurum auctoritate.

Vinculum omnium doctrinarum videtur esse altius, quam ut id nos *humi* strati suspicere possimus.

24. With the interjections *o*, *ah*, *heu*, *ecce*, *en*, *hem*, *pro*, an accusative is used of the thing or person wondered at; as, *o tempora! o mores!* The accusative is also thus used alone, as, *huncine hominem! hancine impudentiam, iudices! me miserum.*

*O fallacem hominum spem fragilemque fortunam et inanes nostras contentiones!*

*Operam tuam multam*, qui et hæc cures, et mea expedias.

*Me cæcum*, qui hæc ante non viderim.

*Quæ, malum*, est ista tanta audacia atque amentia.

*En miserum hominem.*

*Pro* deorum atque hominum *fidem*.

NOTE 1. The vocative may also be used with the above and all interjections, but is not so common as the accusative.

*O miser cum re tum hoc ipso*, quod non sentis, quam miser sis.

NOTE 2. *Væ* and *hei* are usually followed by a dative, as, *væ misero mihi! væ victis!*

NOTE 3. *En* and *ecce* are, perhaps, more frequently used with the nominative.

*Ecce nova turba atque rixa.*

*En metus vivorum existimationis.*

25. These prepositions govern an accusative case: *ad*, *adversus* and *adversum*, *ante*, *apud*, *circa* and *circum*, *circiter*, *cis* and *citra*, *contra*, *erga*, *extra*, *infra*, *inter*, *intra*, *juxta*, *ob*, *penes*, *per*, *pone*, *post*, *præter*, *prope*, *propter*, *secundum*, *supra*, *trans*, *versus* (placed after the case), *ultra*, and *in* and *sub* when they denote motion to a place.

26. The accusative is, chiefly in poets and later prose writers who imitate the usages of poets, used after passive verbs, especially the perfect participle and the tenses formed with it, to designate more particularly the part to which the expression is limited. This is the *Greek accusative*.

*Daphne pulchra verecundo suffunditur ora rubore.*

*Artabanus, ubi data fides a legatis reddendæ dominationi venisse, allevatur animum.*

Hannibal in castra rediit tacita cura *animum incensus*, quod cum duce haudquaquam Flaminio simili futura sibi res esset.

## SECTION IV.

### *Dative Case.*

27. The dative, when compared with the accusative, may in general be defined the case of the remote object; and answers to the question to whom? or for whom? with reference to whom? As the accusative denotes that which is effected or acted upon, as distinguished from the effecting and acting subject, the dative denotes the person or thing with reference to whom or which the subject acts or has a quality; as, *scribo vobis hunc librum*, I write for you this book. *I write*, the action; *this book*, that which is effected; *for you*, the persons with reference to whom the action is performed; *prosum tibi*, I am useful to thee; further, *suadeo tibi*, I advise thee, *nuntio tibi*, I tell thee; in which cases the following proposition, expressing what I advise or tell any one, takes the place of an accusative.

28. Hence, both with transitive and with those intransitive verbs, which commonly take no case, the dative is used to express the relation to an object, to whose benefit or injury something is done. This is called *dativus commodi sive incommodi*.

*Pisistratus sibi, non patriæ, Megarenses vicit.*

*Homo non sibi soli natus erat sed patriæ et suis.*

29. Especially the verbs *vacare* and *nubere* are to be noticed. *Vaco* is properly I am free, with a dative *alicui rei*, for a thing, therefore, I apply myself thereto. *Nubere* means properly to veil, then of the bride, who by the ancient custom was veiled, to veil one's self, *alicui viro* for a man, therefore marry a man.

*Philosophia semper vaco.*

*Civitas Romana inter bellorum strepitum parum olim vacabat liberalibus disciplinis.*

*Plures in Asia mulieres singulis viris solent nubere.*

*Venus nupsit Vulcano; Astarten Adonidi nupsisse proditum est.*



**NOTE.** The dative of the personal pronouns is particularly to be noticed, which is superfluous as to the general meaning of the proposition, but gives a peculiar effect and liveliness to the expression, whence it is, in Greek grammar, called *dativus ethicus*.

Ad illa *mihi* pro se quisque acriter intendat animum.

Quid *mihi* Celsus agit?

Hic *mihi* quisquam misericordiam vocat?

30. Further, the dative is used with all adjectives and adverbs, whose signification requires another object to be mentioned, for or against which, to whose benefit or injury the quality expressed by the adjective or adverb is exerted. To this class belong those which express the idea of *profit* or *disprofit*, *pleasure* or *pain*, *friendship* or *hatred*, *ease* or *difficulty*, *fitness* or *unfitness*, *equality* or *inequality*, *likeness* or *unlikeness*, *nearness*, *necessity*.

Lupus *cani* similis est.

Fidelissimi ante omnia *homini* canis et equus.

Invia *virtuti* nulla est via.

Cunctis esto benignus, nulli blandus, paucis familiaris, omnibus æquus.

Q. Publilius dictator leges *secundissimas* plebi, *adversas* nobilitati tulit.

Tullius Hostilius non solum proximo regi *dissimilis* sed ferocior etiam Romulo fuit.

Scientiæ suavitæ nihil est *hominibus* jucundius.

31. Instead of the dative, those adjectives which express *friendship* or *hatred* may take an accusative with the prepositions *in*, *erga*, *adversus*. Adjectives of *profit* and *fitness* (*utilis* and *aptus*) and their opposites have the matter for which anything serves in the accusative with *ad*; as, homo *ad nullam rem* utilis, locus aptus *ad insidias*; but the person, for whom, is always in the dative.

**NOTE 1.** *Amicus*, *inimicus*, and *familiaris* are properly adjectives, and as such compared and joined to a dative; as substantives they are joined to a genitive and adjective; even in the superlative they are sometimes joined to adjectives. *Hostis*, an undoubted substantive, following the analogy of *inimicus*, takes sometimes a dative.

Atticus non *fortunæ* sed *hominibus* solebat esse *amicus*.

Audi te esse *Cæsari* familiarem.

*Diis* *hominibusque* *hostis*.

*Viros fortes et magnanimos veritatis amicos esse volumus.*  
*Temperantia est libidinum inimica.*

NOTE 2. The adjectives and adverbs which denote *near* and *related*, as *conterminus*, *propinquus*, *vicinus*, *finitimus*, *affinis*, are used with the dative. But *prope*, with its degrees *propior* and *propius*, *proximus* and *proxime*, has the accusative also; and *affinis*, in the signification of participating, the genitive.

*Æthiopia Ægypto est contermina.*

*Mala sunt vicina bonis.*

*Voluptatibus maximis fastidium finitimum est.*

*Circumspicite hosce ipsos homines, qui huic affines sceleri fuerunt.*

*Treviri proximi Rheno flumini sunt.*

*Ubii proximi Rhenum incolunt,*

*Solent accusatores iudicibus persuadere affinem esse alicujus culpæ eum, qui accusetur.*

NOTE 3. *Communis*, common, and *peculiaris* and *proprius*, peculiar, are joined to the dative, but also frequently to the genitive.

*Omni ætati mors est communis.*

*Nobis propria est mentis agitatio atque sollertia, unde origo animi cœlestis creditur.*

*Viri propria maxime est fortitudo.*

*Calamitas communis est utriusque nostrum, sed culpa mea propria est.*

NOTE 4. *Æqualis* equal, and *superstes* surviving, are usually joined to the dative, more rarely to the genitive; the former only in the signification of contemporary, having become a substantive.

*Ennio æqualis fuit Livius, qui primus fabulam dedit.*

*Dionysius Syracusiorum tyrannus fuit et Philistus æqualis temporum illorum.*

*Utinam te, frater, non solum vitæ sed etiam dignitatis meæ superstitem reliquissem.*

*Apud Germanos probrosum superstitem principi suo ex acie recessisse.*

NOTE 5. *Similis* and *dissimilis* are joined to the dative when they denote physical, to the genitive when moral, likeness or unlikeness, yet not without exception.

*Dux ille Græciæ nusquam optat, ut Ajacis similes habeat decem, at ut Nestoris.*

*P. Crassus, dum Cyri et Alexandri similis esse voluit, qui suum cursum transcurrerant, et L. Crassi et multorum Crassorum inventus est dissimillimus.*

32. In like manner the dative is used with those intransitive verbs, which express the ideas just enumerated of the adjectives, in the verbal form; that is, the dative is used with verbs, which signify, to *profit* or *hurt*, to *be friendly* or *unfriendly*, to *please* or *displease*; further, with verbs which signify to *command* or *serve*, to *trust* or *distrust*, to *approach*, to *threaten*, and *be angry*; as *prosum*, *auxilior*, *adminiculor*, *opitutor*, *patrocinator*, *subvenio*, *succurro*, *medeor* — *noceo*, *obsum*, *desum*, *officio*, *incommodo*, *insulto*, *insidior*. *Faveo*, *gratificor*, *indulgeo*, *ignosco*, *studeo*, *parco*, *adulor*, *blandior*, *lenocinator*, *palpor*, *assentior*, *assentor*, *respondeo* — *adversor*, *refragor*, *obsto*, *renitor*, *repugno*, *resisto*, *invideo*, *æmulor*, *obtrecto*, *convicior*, *maledico*. *Placeo*, *arrideo* — *displiceo*. *Dominor*, *impero* (transitively to impose) — *pareo*, *cedo*, *ausculto*, *obedio*, *obsequor*, *obtempero*, *morigeror* (*morem gero*), *alicui dicto audiens sum*, *servio*, *inservio*, *ministro*, *famulor*, *ancillor*, *præstolor*. *Credo* (transitively to confide), *fido*, *confido*, *diffido*. *Immineo*, *propinquo*, *appropinquo*, *impendeo*, *occurro*. *Minor*, *comminor* (both transitively also), *irascor*, *stomachor*, *succenseo*. The impersonal verbs *convenit*, it is suitable, *conducit*, and *expedit*.

*Judicis est innocentiae subvenire.*

In civitate Romana nemini unquam infimo majores nostri patronum deesse voluerunt.

Efficat hoc philosophia; medetur animis, inanes sollicitudines detrahit, cupiditatibus liberat, pellit timores.

Antiochus se nec impensæ nec labori nec periculo parsurum pollicebatur, donec liberam vere Græciam atque in ea principes Ætolos fecisset.

*Probus invidet nemini.*

Demosthenes ejus ipsius artis, cui studebat, primam literam non poterat dicere.

Mundus deo paret, et huic obediunt maria terræque, et hominum vita jussis supremæ legis obtemperat.

*Indulge valetudini tuæ, cui quidem tu adhuc, dum mihi deservis, servisti non satis.*

*Ætoli deserti erant ab Romanis, cui uni fidebant auxilio.*

*Nemo alterius, qui suæ confidit, virtuti invidet.*

*Non homini patrocinaur sed crimini.*

Conon ad mare missus est, ut maritimis civitatibus naves longas imperaret.

NOTE 1. The passive of these verbs is not to be used personally, but only impersonally: *mihi* invidetur et obtrektatur, *mihi* incommodatur, *mihi* maledicuntur, *mihi* parciuntur, I am envied, I am troubled, I am slandered, I am spared.

NOTE 2. *Juvo* and *adjuvo* take an accusative. *Jubeo* is an exception to the verbs of commanding; it corresponds to the English *bid*, and is followed by the accusative with the infinitive.

NOTE 3. As *medeor* so has *medicor* the dative, but sometimes also the accusative.

NOTE 4. *Benedico* as well as *maledico* is used with the dative; in the signification to *bless* *benedico* occurs in ecclesiastical writers only.

NOTE 5. *Invideo* is sometimes found as a transitive verb with an accusative of the thing besides the dative of the person.

*Invidet nobis optimam magistram.*

*Non inviderunt laudes suas mulieribus viri Romani.*

NOTE 6. *Fido* and *confido* are used also with the ablative.

*Est magni animi et prudentia consilioque fidentis præcipere cogitatione futura.*

*Nemo potest aut corporis firmitate aut fortunæ stabilitate confidere.*

NOTE 7. Several verbs have different meanings, according as they govern different cases. *Caveo tibi*, I am concerned for thee; ab *aliquo*, I guard against some one.

*Titus securitati satis cavet.*

*Nostri consules regem inimicissimum mœnibus jam appropinquantem monuerunt, a veneno ut caveret.*

*Metuo* and *timeo tibi*, I fear for thee; *te* or *aliquid a te*, I am afraid of thee.

*Legationem Romanorum vicinæ gentes spernebant, simul tantam in medio crescentem molem sibi ac posteris suis metuebant.*

*Atheniensis Clisthenes Junoni Samiæ, cum rebus timeret suis, filiarum dotes credidit.*

*Ulysses ab Ajace sibi non injuria summum periculum metuebat.*

*Casum prælii Pharsalici nemo nostrum erat, quin timeret.*

*Volo* and *nolo tibi*, I wish thee well or ill; also *tua causa*.

*Hunc tu virum nactus, si me aut sapere aliquid, aut velle tua causa putas, ne dimiseris.*

*Pompeio qui nolunt, iidem tibi, quod eum ornasti, non sunt amici.*

*Consulo, prospicio, provideo tibi*, I provide for thee.

*Non universo hominum generi solum sed etiam singulis a diis immortalibus consuli et provideri solet.*

*Consulite vobis, prospicite patriæ.*

33. Most verbs compounded with prepositions, especially those compounded with *ad*, *ante*, *con*, *in*, *inter*, *ob*, *post*, *præ*, *sub*, and *super*, instead of repeating the preposition or using a similar one with the case belonging to it, may be joined with the dative, either as transitives with an accusative, or as intransitives without it.

34. The following are transitive; *addo*, *affero*, *affigo*, *adjicio*, *adjungo*, *adhibeo*, *admoveo*, *alligo*, *applico*; *circumjicio*; *comparo*, *compono*, *confero*, *conjungo*; *immisceo*, *impono*, *imprimo*, *incido*, *includo*, *infero*, *ingero*, *injicio*, *insero*, *inuro*; *interjicio*, *interpono*; *objicio*, *offundo*, *oppono*; *posthabeo*, *postpono*; *præfero*, *præficio*, *præpono*; *suppono*, *substerno*.

35. Of the second class (intransitives) are the verbs *accedo*, *acquiesco*, *adhæreo*, *alludo*, *annuo*, *arrepo*, *assideo*, *adspiro*; *antecello*; *cohæreo*, *colludo*, *congruo*, *consono*, *consentio*; *incumbo*, *indormio*, *innascor*, *inhæreo*, *inhio*, *invado*, *immorior*, *immoror*; *interjaceo*, *intervenio*; *obambulo*, *obrepo*, *obversor*; *præeo*, *præmineo*, *præsideo*, *prævaleo*; *succumbo*, *supersto*, *supervenio*, *supervivo*, and the compounds of *esse*, *adsum*, *insum*, *intersum*, *præsum*, *subsum*, *supersum*.

NOTE 1. It is well to observe the difference of the dative as used with the verbs enumerated above (32), and as used with the verbs of the present rule (33); with the former the dative is necessary and depends upon the meaning of the verbs; with these the dative is used as an abbreviation in the place of the preposition with its proper case.

NOTE 2. In the above list those compounds only are mentioned with which the dative is found most frequently.

NOTE 3. It is in general to be observed that, in good and simple prose, with most of these compound verbs, the preposition (or an equivalent one) is repeated with its proper case. This is most frequently done with the verbs compounded with *ad*, *con*, and *in*; as *adhibeo*, *confero*, *conjungo*, *communico*, *comparo*, *imprimo*, *insum*, *inscribo*, *interesse* (in the sense of there is a difference).

*Non facile quem dixerim plus studii, quam Servium Sulpicium, ad omnes bonarum rerum disciplinas adhibuisse.*

*Medici gravioribus morbis periculosas curationes et ancipites adhibere coguntur.*

*Cum maximis minima confero.*

*Parva magnis sæpe rectissime conferuntur.*

*In oratore perfecto inest philosophorum omnis scientia.*

*Thebanorum genti plus inest virium quam ingenii.*

NOTE 4.. *Incumbere*, in the signification of *to apply oneself to some-*

thing, is usually connected with *ad* and *in* with the accusative ; in the signification of *to rest upon*, with the dative.

Pergite, ut facitis, adolescentes, atque *in id studium*, in quo estis, *incumbite*.

Nullam moram interponendam putavi, quo omnes acrius graviusque *incumberent ad ulciscendas rei publicæ injurias*.

NOTE 5: *Occumbere* is more frequently used with the ablative *morte*, than the dative *morti*, sometimes with the accusative.

Cacus clava ictus *morte occubuit*.

Idcirco genueram, ut esset, qui pro patria *mortem* non dubitaret *occumbere*.

NOTE 6. As to the prepositions which, in case of repetition of the preposition, may be used in the place of those of the compounds :

For *ad* is used *in* ; *accedere in* oppidum.

" *in* " *ad* ; *incumbere ad* studia.

" *ob* " *in, ad, ante* ; *aliquid obrepi in* animum ; *obrepere ad* honores ; *obambulare ante* portas.

For *præ* is used *ante* ; *præcurrere ante* omnes.

" *pro* " *ad, ante* ; *procumbere ante* pedes, *ad* genua.

" *sub* " *ad, in* ; *succedere ad* or *in* urbem.

36. Other intransitive compounded verbs are construed, even without repetition of the preposition, with the same case, which the preposition governs when it is not in composition. This applies first, to the verbs compounded with the prepositions *ab, de, and ex* ; as, *absistere, abstinere, decedere, dejicere, depellere, evadere, exire*, where the ablative may also be derived from their signification of a division. Secondly, intransitives, compounded with *circum, præter, trans*, and a part of those compounded with *super*, are used with the accusative ; as, *cirtumeo, circumsideo, circumsisito, circumsto, circumvenio, prætereo, prætergredior, præterfluo*, (and *interfluo*), *prætereher, prætervolo, transeo, trano, supergredior, supervado, transvolo*. Others admit of both cases, the dative and the accusative ; especially verbs signifying to *anticipate* and to *surpass* ; as *antecedere, anteire, antevenire, præcedere, præcurrere, prægredi, prævenire*.

Dies et noctes omnia *nos* undique fata *circumstant*.

Populus solet nonnunquam *dignos præterire*.

Hannibal cum reliquis copiis *Pyrenæum transgreditur*.

Hæc Fætialis, cum *fines superscandit*, hæc *portam ingrediens* peragit.

Atticus cum biduum *cibo se abstinuisset*, levior morbus esse cœpit.  
Fustuarium miles meretur, qui *præsidio decedit*.

Vulpecula *epasit putes*.

Satis docuisse videor, hominis natura quanto *omnes anteciret amantes*.

Vestræ fortunæ *meis præcedunt*.

37. Finally; several of the intransitive verbs compounded with prepositions assume a transitive meaning, and not only take an accusative in the active, but may in the passive be used *personally*, which is not the case with the preceding verbs; particularly *invado* attack, *alluo* wash, *ineo*, enter, *adeo* and *convenio* aliquem, accost, *subeo*, aspericulum, encounter, *obeo* and *oppeto* mortem, undergo and seek death, *obsideo*, besiege; and the deponents *adorior* and *aggredior*, attack, which of course have no passive. But of the actives we may say in the passive, for example, Massilia *alluitur* mari, hostes statim *invadebantur*, urbs *obsidetur*, consilium nefarium *initum est*. See 15, note 1.

NOTE. The circumstance of the verb being used personally in the passive, or not, determines, whether it is to be considered a transitive, or an intransitive with a preposition understood.

38. *Adspargo* and *inspergo*, *circumdo* and *circumfundo*, *dono* and *impertio*, *exuo* and *induo*, are used, either with an accusative of the thing and dative of the person, or with an accusative of the person and ablative of the thing: e. g. *circumdo alicui custodias*, *circumdo aliquem custodiis*; whence, in the passive, *custodiæ tibi circumdantur*, or, (tu) *custodiis circumdaris*. So *maculas adspargo vitæ tuæ* and *maculis vitam tuam adspargo*; *dono tibi pecuniam* and *dono te pecunia*; *impertio tibi laudes* and *laudibus te impertio*, &c. *Exuo tibi clipeum*, *induit sibi torquem*, or more commonly with omission of the dative of one's own person, *exuo*, *induo vestem*, I put off (me), or on (me), a garment. *Exuo te aliqua re* is used in a figurative sense, and signifies I rob thee of something. *Intercludo*, I shut up, as *hostibus fugam*; or in the sense of to remove, *aliquem aliqua re* and *ab aliqua re*. *Interdico tibi aliquid*, I forbid something to thee; the construction *interdico te aliqua re* is nowhere found, but a mixture of the two *interdico tibi aliqua re*, I interdict thee the use of something.

*Orationi adspersentur* etiam *sales*, qui in dicendo nimium quantum valent.

Pythagoras nè Apollini quidem Delio hostiam immolare voluit, ne *aram sanguine adspiceret*.

*Parthi folia* brati *inspergunt potionibus*.

*Oleam sale inspergito*.

Dionysius *fossam latam cubiculari lecto circumdedit*.

Deus *animum circumdedit corpore*.

Equites *Hannoni se circumfudere*.

*Agésilæum amici*, quod mel non habebant, *cera circumfuderunt*.

*Ciceroni populus Romanus æternitatem immortalitatemque donavit*.

Atticus *Athenienses universos frumento donavit*.

Te exorabo, ut *mihi* tuæ suavitatis *aliquid impertias*.

*Doctrinis* ætas puerilis *impertiri debet*.

Jam obduruimus et *humanitatem omnem exuimus*.

Cæsar *hostes omnes armis exruit*.

A. Torquatus cum Gallo apud Anienem depugnavit, et ex ejus *spoliis sibi et torquem et cognomen induit*.

*Duabus* quasi a natura *induti sumus personis*.

Pontis atque itinerum angustię *multitudini fugam intercluserant*.

Galli consuetudine populi Romani *commeatibus nostros intercludere instituunt*.

Leges Cæsaris jubent ei, qui de vi, itemque qui majestatis damnatus sit, *aqua et igni interdici*.

39. With passive verbs the dative is *sometimes* used alone, instead of *ab* with an ablative.

Quidquid in hac *causa mihi* susceptum est, Quirites, id omne me rei publicę causa suscepisse confirmo.

Barbarus hic ego sum, quia non intelligor *ulli*.

NOTE. With the gerund and the future passive participle, which is derived from the gerund, the dative is always used instead of the ablative with *ab*; as *moriendum mihi est*. See § 15. But for this the dative with passive verbs might be considered altogether a grecism, inasmuch as the earlier prose writers, particularly Cicero and Cæsar, used it rarely and, with four exceptions in Cicero, only after the perfect passive participle and the tenses formed with it.

40. *Esse*, with a dative of the person, means *to have*; *sunt mihi libri*, is equivalent to *habeo libros*.



*Homini cum deo similitudo est.*

*An nescis longas regibus esse manus.*

*Mihi est nomen*, therefore, is equivalent to, I am called, and the name itself may stand either in the nominative, or in the dative by attraction to the dative of the person.

*Syracusicus est fons aquæ dulcis, cui nomen Arethusa est.*

*Consules leges decemvirales, quibus tabulis duodecim est nomen, in æs incisas in publico proposuerunt.*

NOTE. The same takes place with the passive expressions *datum, inditum, factum est nomen*; e. g. *Tarquinius, cui cognomen Superbo ex moribus datum.* With the active verbs *dare, addere, indere, dicere, ponere, imponere, tribuere alicui nomen* or *cognomen*, the denomination is usually in the dative; *dare alicui cognomen tardo et pingui*; but it is also found in the same case as the word *nomen* or *cognomen*: e. g. *puer, cui Ascanium parentes dixere nomen.* The name may also be put in the genitive, according to the general rule, that when two substantives are connected together, one of them takes the genitive; as, *Q. Metellus prætor, cui ex virtute Macedonici nomen inditum est*; but the dative is to be considered as the peculiarly Latin construction.

41. With the verbs *esse, dare, and venire*, and others of the same meaning, besides the dative of the person, another is used to express the purpose and end. It answers to the question, to what end?

*Dare* belongs to this class, not only in the simple sense of giving, like *mitto* and *relinquo*, but also in that of imputing; *apponere, ducere, habere, tribuere, and vertere*, have a similar meaning. The verb *proficisci* corresponds to *venire*.

*Virtutes hominibus decori gloriæque sunt.*

*Attalus, Asiæ rex, regnum suum Romanis dono dedit.*

*Mille Platæenses Atheniensibus adversus Persas auxilio venerunt.*

*Pausanias, quos Byzantii ceperat regis propinquos, huic muneri misit.*

*Cæsar quinque cohortes, quas minime firmas ad dimicandum existimabat, castris præsidio reliquit.*

*Vitio mihi dant*, quod mortem hominis necessarii graviter fero.

*Gloriari solebat Q. Hortensius, quod nunquam bello civili interfuisset; hoc illi tribuebatur ignavia.*

NOTE. There are many datives of this kind; I give a thing *præmio, muneri*, I leave something *custodiæ, præsidio*, something is counted *vitio, crimini, probro, opprobrio, laudi, salutis, utilitati, emolumento*,

&c. To be noticed are also such datives as *these, esui, usui, derisui, cordi, curæ aliquid est*; moreover *canere receptui*, to sound a retreat; *opponere pignori*, to give a pledge.

## SECTION V.

### *Genitive Case.*

42. When two substantives of different signification are united with one another, (unless the one is added in the same case with the other by way of explanation, which is an apposition,) the one which denotes that from which the other originates, or to which it belongs, or which is the object of the action expressed by the other, is in the genitive. This genitive, depending upon a substantive, is in Latin of two kinds, the genitive of the *subject*, or of the *object*. The genitive is *subjective* when it denotes that which does something, or to which something belongs; *hominum facta, liber pueri*: it is *objective*, when it denotes that which is the object of the action or feeling spoken of; *amor virtutis, tedium laboris, desiderium otii, remedium doloris*. In English this latter relation of substantives is expressed by prepositions. Thus we cannot say virtue's love, &c., but the love of virtue, the irksomeness of labor, the desire of ease, the remedy for grief.

*Numa divini auctor juris fuit, Servius conditor omnis in civitate discriminis ordinumque.*

*Jucunda est memoria præteritorum malorum.*

*Custos virtutum omnium verecundia est.*

*Lucullus delectabatur mirifice lectione librorum, de quibus audiebat.*

*Animi morbi sunt cupiditates immensæ divitiarum, gloriæ, dominationis, libidinosarum etiam voluptatum.*

*Quid mihi erat utilius quam hominis nobilissimi atque honoratissimi conjunctio?*

NOTE 1. Prepositions are sometimes used in Latin, instead of the objective genitive, when perspicuity requires it; yet by no means so often as in English, where prepositions must necessarily be used.

Nihil est tam flexibile quam *voluntas erga nos sensusque civium*.  
Hannibal Antiocho multa de fide sua et odio in *Romanos* commemoravit.

Non solum in *homines obsequia* sed etiam in *deos ceremoniæ religionesque* tolluntur.

Pro *veteribus Helvetiorum injuriis populi Romani* ab iis pœnas bello repetiit.

A combination of an objective (*populi Romani*) and subjective (*Helvetiorum*) genitive; for the old injuries which the Helvetii had done to the Roman people.

NOTE 2. A substantive may be connected with the genitive of a personal pronoun, which genitive is commonly objective, as *miseri-cordiam nostri habere*, have pity for us; but instead of the subjective genitive of personal pronouns the possessive pronouns are used. There are, however, exceptions from both rules. In this connexion is to be noticed *mea, tua, sua, nostra, vestra causa*, for *mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri causa*; for my sake, &c.

Misit filium non solum *sui deprecatorem* sed etiam *accusatorem mei*.

*Liber meus* (not *liber mei*).

Ad Cyrum nobilissimum regem *originem sui* retulit (for *originem suam*).

*Ipse suus fuit accusator*.

*Desiderium vestrum* ferre non possum.

*Vestra* magis hoc *causa* volebam quam *mea*.

Filium tuum ea esse opinione et *tua* et *ipsius* et inprimis *mea causa* gaudeo.

NOTE 3. It cannot be said that one genitive should not depend upon another, inasmuch as there are instances in the best writers; but obscurity should be avoided.

Desinamus mirari, quæ causa sit *eloquentium paucitatis*.

Juvabit me ipsum consuluisse memoriæ *rerum gestarum principis terrarum populi*.

43. The genitive is used to express that one thing is the *property* or *quality* of another. This, however, can only be done, when the substantive in the genitive is joined with an adjective; e. g. not *homo ingenii*, but *homo magni, summi, excellentis ingenii*. See the rules for the ablative vi, 66.

Titus *facilitatis tantæ et liberalitatis* fuit, ut nulli quidquam negaret.

Tarquinius fratrem habuit Aruntem, *multis ingenii* juvenem.

NOTE 1. The genitive is used in a similar manner to denote the number of which something consists.

*Xerxis classis mille et ducentarum navium longarum fuit.*

Julius Cæsar annum ad solis cursum accommodavit, ut *trecentorum sexaginta quinque dierum* esset.

NOTE 2. The genitive must not be supposed to depend upon *esse*; but if no substantive is expressed, one must be understood, as, *homo, res, &c.*

*Magni judicii, summæ etiam facultatis* esse debet orator.

*Virtus non tantarum virium* est, ut se ipsa tueatur.

44. The genitive is used to express the whole, of which anything is a part (*Genitivus partitivus*). This is done with comparatives if two are spoken of, and superlatives if more than two; e. g. *doctior duorum juvenum, doctissimus Romanorum*; and with all words which express a number, whether numerals, adjectives, or pronouns; *solus, nullus, nemo, nihil, multi, pauci, quis? quotusquisque, unusquisque, aliquis, quidam, aliquot, nonnulli, uter, alter, neuter, alteruter, utervis*. The genitive, which is used with the superlative of adjectives, is used also with those of adverbs; e. g. *optimus omnium, or optime omnium vixit*.

*Populus Romanus legem dedit, ut consulum alter e plebe* crearetur.

*Græcorum oratorum præstantissimus* fuit Demosthenes.

Duo sunt aditus in Ciliciam ex Syria, *quorum uterque* parvis præsidiis propter angustias intercludi potest.

NOTE 1. In connexion with the above adjectives the genitive is not necessarily used, but the adjectives may be put in the same case with the noun; *multi milites* is as correct as *multi militum*.

NOTE 2. Livy uses participles like partitives with the genitive; later prose writers, and poets, even adjectives in the positive degree.

*Hannibal cum delectis peditum equitumque* in Campaniam contendit.

*Nigræ lanarum* nullum colorem bibunt.

NOTE 3. The prepositions *ante, de, ex, in, and inter*, with their respective cases (but never *ab*), serve as a circumlocution of the genitive.

*Acerrimus ex omnibus nostris sensibus* est sensus videndi.

M. Calidius non fuit orator *unus e multis*; potius inter multos prope singularis.

Themistocles noctu *de servis suis*, quem habuit *fidelissimum*, ad regem misit.

Alexander non salutari sed adorari se jubet; *acerrimus inter recusantes Callisthenes* fuit.

*Thales sapientissimus in septem fuit.*

*Romulus fuit longe ante alios acceptissimus militum animis.*

NOTE 4. *Uter, alter*, and *neuter* differ from *quis, alius*, and *nullus* in this respect, that the former refer to a whole consisting of *two*.

NOTE 5. As to the two forms of the genitive plural, *nostri vestri*, and *nostrum vestrum*, it is to be observed that the latter is the genitive *partitivus*, the former the *objective genitive*.

*Vitam omnium vestrum vobis conservatam ac restitutam videtis.*

*Incertum est, quam longa nostrum cujusque vita futura sit.*

*Maneat, quæso, gentibus, si non amor nostri, at certe odium sui.*

*Habetis ducem memorem vestri, oblitum sui.*

It is to be noticed, however, that *vestrum* is found not as a *partitive genitive*.

*Noli me ad contentionem vestrum revocare.*

*Vestrum non sum securus.*

45. The *nominatives* and *accusatives neuter* of pronouns, and of some adjectives which are used as pronouns, take a *genitive*, either because they are virtually become *substantives*, or because they denote a part of a whole. Such *neuters* are *tantum, quantum, aliquantum, multum, plus, plurimum, minus, minimum, aliud, quid* with its compounds *aliquid, quidquid, quippiam*, and *quidquam*; *hoc, id, illud, istud, idem, quod*. *Nihil* is always a *substantive*; *satis, parum, abunde, affatim, partim*, have also a *genitive*, because, though strictly *adverbs*, they are used as *substantives*.

It is to be observed, that these *neuters* can be used as *substantives* only in the *nominative* and *accusative*, because it is only in those cases that they can be distinguished by the form from the *masculine* and *feminine*. Further; they must not depend on *prepositions*.

*Quantum incrementi Nilus capit, tantum spei in annum est.*

*Procellæ quanto plus habent virium, tanto minus temporis.*

*Pythagoras, quum in geometria quiddam novi invenisset, Musis bovem immolasse dicitur.*

*Cimon habebat satis eloquentiæ.*

*Nonnulli nimis insidiarum ad capiendas aures adhibere videntur.*

NOTE 1. The *genitive* is often not a *substantive*, but the *neuter* of an adjective, which has come to be used *substantively*, as *quiddam novi, nihil mali*. It must be here remarked, that only adjectives in *um* can be used in this way; and though *aliquid novi* may be said, *aliquid*

*memorabilis* cannot, but only *aliquid memorabile*, unless it be in connexion with a neuter in *um*, as, *aliquid novi ac memorabilis*.

Quanto, si *quidquam* in vobis non dico *civilis* sed *humani* esset, favore vos indulgere comitati patrum atque obsequio plebis oportuit.

NOTE 2. The adverbs of *place*, *ubi*, *ubicunque*, *usquam*, *nusquam*, (*longe*), *unde*, *hic*, *huc*, *eo*, *eodem*, *quo*, *aliquo*, are joined with the genitives *gentium*, *terrarum*, *loci*, *locorum*, and by that addition have their meaning strengthened; e. g. *ubinam gentium* sumus? *abes longe gentium*; *aliquo terrarum* migrandum est; *ubi terrarum* es? *quo loci* sum, i. e. *ubi* sum; *eodem loci* res est, *quo* tu reliquisti. Terence has *hic*, *huc* *viciniæ*, for here, hither in the neighborhood. The adverbs *huc*, *eo*, *quo*, take, in the sense of degree, also other genitives: *huc arrogantia venerat*, he had come to that degree of arrogance; *eo insolentia furorisque* processit; scire videmini, *qua amentia* progressi sitis. *Minime gentium* is merely a stronger negation; *not in the least*.

*Ubi terrarum* esses, ne suspicabar quidem.

Migrandum Rhodum aut *aliquo terrarum* arbitror.

Perseus perfugium sibi *nusquam gentium* esse ait.

Nostri tyrannicidæ *longe gentium* absunt.

NOTE 3. The genitive seems to be pleonastically added in the following expressions, which denote a point of time; *tum* (*tunc*) *temporis*, at that time; *postea loci*, afterwards; *ad id locorum*, so far; *postridie* and *pridie* with *ejus diei*; *interea loci*, and *adhuc locorum* (*in the meanwhile*, and *till now*) in the comic writers. In the phrase *quantum* or *quoad ejus fieri potest*, or *facere possum*, *ejus* refers to the preceding proposition; so much of it, or so far as it is possible.

Astyages filiam ex gente obscura *tunc temporis* Persarum Cambysi in matrimonium tradidit.

*Postridie ejus diei* Cæsar Bibracte ire contendit.

In senatu pulcherrime stabamus, quod jam illam sententiam Bibuli de tribus legatis *pridie ejus diei* fregeramus.

NOTE 4. To be noticed are the peculiar expressions *id temporis*, *id* or *hoc ætatis*; for *eo tempore*, *ea* or *hac ætate*. Tacitus uses in imitation of this, *Romanorum nemo id auctoritatis* aderat, for *ea auctoritate*.

Venit ad me, et quidem *id temporis*.

Homo *id ætatis*.

46. In poets and later prose writers (that is, after Cicero), the neuters of adjectives in the singular, as well as particularly in the plural, acquire a substantive signification, and are joined with a genitive; as *exiguum campi* ante castra erat, a little free space, where the common phrase is *exiguus cam-*

*pus*; further, in *ultima Asia* penetrare for the common in *ultimam Asiam*; *summa tectorum* obtinere for *summa tecta*.

Apelles *Veneris* caput et *summa pectoris* poltissima arte perfecit.

Tarquinius et Collatinus Lucretiam in *medio ædium* sedentem inveniunt.

*Extreme ætatis* patres Livium redire ad urbem iusserunt.

47. Many adjectives, particularly those which signify *sharing, desiring, being full, knowing, remembering*, or their contraries, are used with the genitive of a substantive or pronoun. They are called relative adjectives.

The following in particular are construed in this way; *particeps, affinis, expers, consors* and *exsors*; *cupidus, studiosus, avidus, avarus*; *plenus, capax, insatiabilis, fecundus, fertilis, ferax, sterilis*; *peritus, imperitus, rudis, conscius, inscius, nescius, gnarus, ignarus, prudens, providus*; *insolens* and *insolitus* or *insuetus*; *compos, impos, potens* and *impotens*; *memor, immemor, tenax, curiosus, incuriosus*.

Pythagoras *sapientiæ studiosos* appellavit philosophos.

*Conscia mens recti famæ mendacia* ridet.

Themistocles *peritissimos bellî navalis* fecit Athenienses.

*Venturæ memores* jam nunc estote *senectæ*.

NOTE 1. Poets and those prose writers who affect to differ from the common language, especially Tacitus, extend this rule and construe all adjectives expressing an affection of the mind, with the genitive; as, *ambiguus consilii*; *modicus voluptatum*; *securus futuri*; *piger periculi*, &c.

NOTE 2. The same class of writers use the genitive after adjectives, where the common language would employ the ablative; as *integer vitæ*; *diversus morum*; *vetus operis ac laboris*.

48. Participles of the present active, when, after the manner of adjectives, they express a permanent quality, and not a single action or transient state, govern the genitive, and admit of comparison. Those occurring most frequently in this way are: *amans, appetens, fugiens, intelligens, metuens, negligens, observans, retinens, tolerans, patiens* and *impatiens, temperans* and *intemperans*; e. g. *amans patriæ*; *Gracchi amantissimi plebis Romanæ*; *appetens laudis*; *fugiens laboris*; *imminentium intelligens*; *officii negligens*; *miles patiens* or *impatiens solis, pulveris, tempestatum*.

Epaminondas adeo fuit *veritatis diligens*, ut ne joco quidem mentiretur.

Romani semper *appetentes gloria* præter ceteras gentes atque *avidè laudis* fuerunt.

Alphenus est eques Romanus locuples, *sui negotii bene gerens*.

Sumus natura *appetentissimi honestatis*.

Sanctus haberi *justitiæque tenax* factis dictisque mereris.

49. With verbs of *remembering, reminding, and forgetting*, (*admonere, commovere, commonefacere; meminisse, reminisci, recordari, in mentem venire, oblivisci*), the person or the thing, of which any one reminds himself or another, or which he forgets, is put in the genitive; frequently also the *thing* in the accusative.

Medicus, ut primum mentis compotem esse regem sensit, modo *matris sororumque modo tantæ victoriae appropinquantis* admonere non destitit.

Hannibal milites adhortatus est, ut *reminiscerentur pristinae virtutis suæ*, neve *mulierum liberumque* obliviscerentur.

*Illud* semper memento; qui ipse sibi sapiens prodesse nequit, nequidquam sapit.

Tu, C. Cæsar, *oblivisci nihil* soles nisi *inurias*.

Non omnes possunt esse Scipiones aut Maximi, ut *urbium expugnationes, ut pedestres navalesque pugnas, ut bella a se gesta triumphosque* recordentur.

NOTE 1. With the verbs of *reminding*, besides the accusative of the person, the accusative of the thing is commonly used only when expressed by the neuter of a pronoun.

Discipulos *id unum moneo*, ut præceptores suos non minus quam ipsa studia ament.

Jugurtha viritim, uti quemque extulerat, *commonefaciebat beneficii sui*.

*Eam rem* locus admonuit.

NOTE 2. With verbs of *remembering* or *forgetting*, the person remembered or forgotten is rarely put in the accusative.

NOTE 3. *Memini, recordor, and moneo* with its compounds, are sometimes used with the preposition *de*.

*De homine importunissimo* ne *meminisse* quidem volo.

50. The impersonal verbs, *pudet, piget, pœnitent, tædet, miseret, miseretur, miserescit*, require the person who is the subject of the feeling to be in the accusative case, and the object which excites it to be in the genitive; or, if it be a



verb, in the infinitive mood, or with *quod*, or an interrogative particle.

*Me non solum piget stultitiæ meæ, sed etiam pudet.*

*Eorum nos magis miseret, qui nostram misericordiam non requirunt, quam qui illam efflagitant.*

*Socratem non puduit fateri se multas res nescire.*

*Non pœnitet me vixisse, quoniam ita vixi, ut non frustra me natum existimem.*

*Quantum pœnitet, quod animum tuum offendit.*

*Disces, quamdiu voles; tamdiu autem velle debebis, quoad te; quantum proficias, non pœnitebit.*

*Adolescentem vidi miserum, et me ejus miseritum est.*

NOTE 1. *Misereor* and *miseresco*, when used personally, to take pity upon, are also joined with the genitive; *miseremini sociorum*; *misertus tanti viri*; *generis miseresce tui*. On the other hand, *miserrari* and *commiserari* govern the accusative.

*Deos immortales miseritos nominis Romani pepercisse innoxiiis exercitibus patres credebant.*

*Non queo satis communem omnium nostram fortunam miserari.*

NOTE 2. *Pudet* without an accusative, but with a genitive, means to be shamed by one, or one shames.

*Pudet hujus legionis, pudet quartæ, quæ pari virtute nostram auctoritatem probans non ut consulem et imperatorem suum sed ut hostem et oppugnatorem patriæ reliquit Antonium*; *pudet optimi exercitus*, qui conjunctus est ex duobus; this legion shames us, &c.

51. The verbs of *valuing, esteeming*, and their passives (*æstimare, ducere, facere* (pass. *feri*), *habere, pendere, putare*, and *esæ*); verbs of *buying, selling, lending, or hiring* (*emere, vendere, conducere, locare*, and as passives in sense, *stare, prostare, licere*, to be exposed, and *venire*), take a genitive of the price or value, when expressed indefinitely. If it is expressed by a substantive, the price is put in the ablative. See § 6, 59. Such genitives are *magni, permagni, pluris, plurimi* and *maximi, parvi, minoris, minimi, tanti, quanti, tantidem, quantivis, quanticunque*; but never (or very seldom) *multi* and *majoris*.

*Si prata et hortulos tanti æstimamus, quanti est æstimanda virtus?*

*Mea mihi conscientia pluris est quam omnium sermo.*

*Mercatores non tantidem vendunt, quanti emerunt.*

Agere considerate *pluris est* quam cogitare prudenter.

*Pluris putare*, quod utile videatur, quam quod honestum, turpissimum est.

NOTE 1. Besides the above genitives, the following: *assis*, *floci*, *nauci*, *pensi*, *pili*, *nihili*, and *hujus*, are to be noticed.

Intellectum est iudices rem publicam *floci* non *facere*.

Noli spectare, *quanti* homo sit; *parvi* enim *pretii est*, qui jam *nihili sit*.

Non *habeo nauci* Marsum augurem.

M. Porcius Cato L. Flaminium e numero senatorum sustulit, quia in provincia quendam damnatum securi percusserat, nec *pensi* duxerat regis Philippi supplices manus.

Quod te purges, hanc injuriam mihi nolle factam esse, *hujus* non *faciam*.

NOTE 2. Instead of *nihili*, *pro nihilo* is sometimes used.

Qui magno est animo atque forti, omnia, quæ cadere in hominem possint, despicit, et *pro nihilo* putat.

NOTE 3. The expressions *æqui boni* or *æqui bonique facere*, *consulere*; *boni consulere*, to be satisfied, belong to this class.

Consul est a consulendo vel a iudicando; unde adhuc remanet illud. Rogat, *boni consulas*, id est, bonum iudices.

Si vos, Ætoli, nec cura Argorum civitatis nec periculum movet, nos Romani *æqui bonique facimus*.

NOTE 4. The ablatives *magno*, *permagno*, *plurimo*, *parvo*, *nihilo*, also are used with those verbs, although the ablative is properly the case for the *specified amount* of the price. In particular they are used with verbs of buying, and selling, where the genitive of those five words is not common, while the genitives are the most frequent with the verbs of prizing; therefore, *conduxit* in Palatio non *magno* domum; decumas ejus agri *permagno* vendidisti; frumentum suum quam *plurimo* vendere; *parvo* fames constat, *magno* fastidium, hunger costs little, satiety much. It may be assumed, that this use of the genitive and ablative came from the omission of the word *pretii* and *pretio*; rem illam *magni* æstimo, i. e. *magni pretii*; or *magno* emi for *magno pretio* emi; which sometimes occurs.

Chrysegonus vas Corinthium *tanto pretio* mercatus est, ut, qui prætereuntes pretium enumerari audiebant, fundum venire arbitrentur.

NOTE 5. Sometimes, but not frequently, the adverbs *care*, *bene*, *male*, with their comparatives and superlatives, are used with verbs of buying, selling, and prizing.

*Ea emptione nos bene emisse iudicati sumus.*

Quæcunque in me bona sunt aut fortunæ beneficio tributa aut meo labore parta a te propter amorem *carius sunt æstimata.*

NOTE 6. The genitive of the price is also used with the verbs *cænare* and *habitare*, as, *quanti habitus*, what is the price of thy lodging.

52. The genitive is used to denote the crime or offence with verbs of *accusing, convicting, condemning, acquitting; accuso, incuso, arguo, insimulo, interrogo, increpo, infamo; convinco, coarguo; damno, condemno; absolvo, libero, purgo*, together with words which express, *citing before court*, as *ago, arcesso, cito, defero, postulo, reum facio*, with omission of the word *crimine* on the charge, accusation.

Such genitives are, *peccati, maleficii, sceleris, cædis, veneficii, parricidii, furti, repetundarum, peculatus, falsi, injuriarum, rei capitalis, proditiõnis, majestatis; farther, probri, stultitiæ, avaritiæ, audaciæ, vanitatis, levitatis, temeritatis, ignaviæ, timoris, impietatis*, and others.

Miltiades *proditiõnis est accusatus*, quod, cum Parum expugnare posset, a pugna discessisset.

Thæsybulus legem tulit, ne quis *ante actarum rerum accusaretur*, neve *multaretur*.

Quis non frangeret inferiorum libidines, nisi illi ipsi, qui eas frangere deberent, *cupiditatis ejusdem tenerentur*.

Cælius judex *absolvit injuriarum* eum, qui Lucilium poetam in scena nominatim læserat.

NOTE 1. To this class of verbs some adjectives, with the meaning of participles, are to be joined: *reus, compertus, noxius* and *innocius, manifestus*.

Ille dives, qui statuum pauperis inimici flagellis cecidit, *reus est injuriarum*.

De *manifestis rerum capitalium* more majorum supplicium sumendum.

Prætor homines *sacrilegii compertos* in vinculis Romam misit.

NOTE 2. The genitive of the crime is to be explained by supplying the ablative *crimine* on the charge, or *nomine* under the name or head; and these words are not unfrequently added.

Alcibiades postulabat, ne absens *invidiæ crimine accusaretur*.

Servi Leonidæ *nomine sceleris conjurationisque* damnati sunt.

NOTE 3. The preposition *de* is sometimes used instead of the genitive.

Pilius *de répetundis* M. Servilium *postulavit*.

Non oportuit Sextium *de vi reum fieri*.

NOTE 4. The punishment to which one is sentenced is also expressed by the genitive, less frequently by the ablative, or the prepositions *ad* or *in*; as, *capitis, mortis, multæ, pecuniæ, quadrupli, octupli*; or *capite, morte, multa, pecunia*, — *ad penam, ad bestias, metalla, in metallum, in expensas* to the costs. *Voti* or *votorum damnari*, to be condemned to fulfil one's vow, that is, *to obtain one's wish*.

Multi animos, quasi *capite damnatos*, morte multant.

Socratis responso sic iudices exarserunt, ut *capitis* hominem innocentissimum *condemnarent*.

Caligula multos honesti ordinis *ad metalla et munitiones viarum* aut *ad bestias* *condemnavit*.

Furius dictator inter ipsam dimicationem ædem Junoni Monetæ vovit; *cujus damnatus voti*, cum victor Romam revertisset, dictatura se abdicavit.

53. With the omission of the idea *res, negotium*, the genitive is used with *esse* in the sense of belonging to, being the business, office, or lot of any one, and with *fieri* in the sense of becoming the property of; e. g. *est judicis*, it is the business of a judge; *non est mearum virium*, it is not an undertaking for my strength; *Asia Romanorum facta est*, Asia came under the dominion of the Romans.

Instead of the genitives of the personal pronouns, *mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri*, the neuters *meum, tuum, suum, nostrum, vestrum*, are used in this sense.

*Cujusvis hominis est* errare, *nullius nisi insipientis* in errore perseverare.

*Sapientis judicis est* semper, non quid ipse velit, sed quid lex et religio cogat, cogitare.

Bello Gallico præter Capitolium omnia *hostium erant*.

*Tuum est*, M. Cato, qui non mihi, non tibi, sed patriæ natus es, videre, quid agatur.

Omnia, quæ *mulieris fuerunt, viri fiunt* dotis nomine.

Rudem esse omnino in poetis *inertissimæ segnitia est*.

54. A similar ellipsis takes place with *interest* and *refert*, joined with a genitive of the person whose interest is concerned. Here too instead of interest *mei, tui, sui, nostri*,

*vestri*, use is made of the possessive pronouns, but in another case, the ablative feminine, *mea, tua, sua, nostra, vestra*. (The ablative *causa* must here be supplied, because the *a* is sometimes found used long.)

The thing in which any one's interest is involved is not expressed by a substantive, but by an accusative with an infinitive, or by *ut*, and the interrogative particles with a subjunctive: as, *multum mea interst, ut diligens sis*, or, *te esse diligentem*, or, *(utrum) diligens sis necne*.

*Semper Milo, quantum interesset P. Clodii se perire, cogitabat.*

*Cæsar dicere solebat non tam sua quam rei publicæ interesse, uti salvus esset.*

*Quid refert, utrum voluerim fieri, an factum gaudeam.*

*Inventæ sunt epistolæ, ut certiores faceremus absentes, si quid esset, quod eos scire aut nostra aut ipsorum interesset.*

NOTE. The degree of importance is expressed by adverbs, or by the neuters of adjectives, or by their genitives; *magis, magnopere, vehementer, parum, minime, tam, tantopere*: *multum, plus, plurimum, permultum, infinitum, mirum quantum, minus, nihil, aliquid, quiddam, tantum, quantum*; *tanti, quanti, magni, permagni, parvi*.

## SECTION VI.

### *The Ablative.*

55. The ablative is used in the Latin language to express certain relations of substantives, which in English are expressed by prepositions.

56. The ablative is used with passive verbs to express the acting subject, which in the construction with the active voice is in the nominative: as, *sol mundum illustrat*, passive: *sole mundus illustratur*; *fecunditas arborum me delectat*, *fecunditate arborum delector*. But if this acting subject is a person, the preposition *ab* is used, with the single exception of the participle of the verb to be born, *natus*; and in poets *editus, genitus, ortus, satus*.

*Dei providentia mundus administratur.*

*Illud tibi affirmo fore, ut absens a multis, cum redieris, ab omnibus collaudere.*

*Filii justa uxore nati.*

Publius Africanus fidem fecit non sanguine humano sed stirpe divina satum se esse.

NOTE. The preposition *a* is used, as stated above, also after intransitive verbs which may be interpreted as having a passive meaning, as, *vapulare* (verberari), *venire* (vendi), *bene* or *male audire* (laudari or vituperari).

Testis in reum rogatus est, an *ab reo* fustibus *vapulasset*.

57. Similar to this is the use of the ablative to express the efficient cause with adjectives, where the periphrasis of the passive construction might be used, as, *fessus*, *æger*, *saucius*, and with intransitive verbs; as *doleo* fratris morte. In this latter case a change to the transitive construction cannot be made with the same verb, but with some similar transitive verb, as *fratris mors me angit*. *Lacrimabat gaudio* may be changed into *gaudium lacrimas ei eliciebat*.

Sæpe homines ægri morbo gravi, cum æstu febrique jactantur, si aquam gelidam biberint, primo relevari videntur.

Minturnenses C. Marium *fessum inedia fluctibusque* recrearunt.

*Nimio gaudio* pæne *desipiebam*.

*Concordia* res parvæ *crescunt*, *discordia* maximæ *dilabuntur*.

NOTE 1. For this ablative, the *ablative of cause*, the prepositions *propter* and *per* can be used, and with persons must be used; as *infelix sum*, or *doleo propter te*. With transitive verbs the cause is expressed not by the ablative merely, but by the preposition *propter* or *causa* with a genitive preceding, as, *hoc feci propter amicitiam nostram*, or *amicitiæ nostræ causa*; or with the possessive pronouns, *mea*, *tua causa*, etc. Sometimes a periphrasis is used with the participles *ductus*, *motus*, *captus*; as, *hoc feci amicitia ductus*.

Quod enim præmium satis magnum est tam benevolis, tam bonis, tam fidelibus servis, *propter quos* (Milo) vivit?

Quotiescunque me petisti, *per me* tibi obstiti.

Homines *novis affinitatibus adducti* veteres inimicitias sæpe depouunt.

NOTE 2. Here may be mentioned the ablative with the defective adjective *macte* and *macti*, *honored*, which is always connected with the imperative *esto* and *estote*.

*Macte virtute diligentiaque esto.*

*Macte uterque ingenti merito.*

58. The ablative is used with verbs, to denote the *instrument* by which anything is done. (*Ablativus instrumenti.*)

*Benevolentiam civium blanditiis colligere turpe est.*

*Terra vestita est floribus, herbis, arboribus, frugibus.*

NOTE 1. If men are the instrument, it is expressed not by the mere ablative, but generally by *per*, or by *opera* and the genitive. This construction becomes with the possessive pronouns *mea*, *tua*, *vestra*, &c., so common, that it is exactly the same as *per me*, *per te*, *per vos*.

*Plura sunt detrimenta publicis rebus quam adjumenta per homines eloquentissimos importata.*

*Placuit Lanuvinos, quorum opera feriæ instauratæ essent, hostias præbere.*

*Mea opera Tarentum recepisti.*

NOTE 2. The instrument is sometimes described by *per*, rather, however, where the manner and the concurring circumstances are to be expressed, than the direct means of bringing about the effect, as *vi oppidum cepit*, *by storm*; *per vim ei bona eripuit*, *violently*.

*Per simulationem amicitiae me prodiderunt.*

59. Hence with verbs of buying and selling, of estimating and being valued, the price or cost is put in the ablative, when expressed by a definite sum. (Of the indefinite price, see § 5, 51.)

*Darius mille talentis percussorem Alexandri emere voluit.*

*Viginti talentis unam orationem Isocrates vendidisse traditur.*

*Denis in diem assibus anima et corpus militum æstimantur.*

*Multo sanguine ea victoria Pœnis stetit.*

*In Sicilia sestertiis binis tritici modius erat.*

60. The ablative is added to nouns (both substantive and adjective), and to verbs to express a circumstance by which they are more exactly fixed and defined, where in English the words *in*, *as to*, &c. would be used.

*Agesilaus claudus fuit altero pede.*

*Sunt quidam homines non re sed nomine.*

NOTE 1. Hence the use of many limiting and defining expressions, *mea sententia*, *mea opinione*, *meo judicio*, with and without *quidem*; *natione Syrus*, *cognomine Barcas*.

Isocratis gloriam nemo *meo quidem iudicio* est postea consecutus.

Lacedæmoniorum *moribus* summa virtus in patientia ponebatur.

NOTE 2. The Latin poets put these limiting expressions in the accusative case, especially when they refer to a part, following the idiom of the Greek. Tacitus and other later prose writers imitate them. But the accusative of *pars*, *magnum* and *maximam partem*, is even in Cicero common.

Arminius impetu equi pervasit *oblitus faciem* suo cruore, ne nosceretur.

Germanorum feminæ *nudæ brachia ac lacertos*.

*Magnam partem* ex iambis nostra constat oratio.

NOTE 3. The ablative *natu* is thus joined to the adjectives *grandis*, *grandior*; *magnus*, *major*, *maximus*; *minor*, *minimus*.

Ennius fuit *major natu* quam Plautus et Nævius.

Q. Maximum Cato adolescens colere cœpit non admodum *grandem natu*, sed tamen jam ætate provectum.

NOTE 4. With *laborare*, to suffer pain, *ex* is joined to denote the part affected.

Dionysius Stoicus cum *ex renibus laboraret*, clamabat falsa esse illa, quæ antea de dolore ipse sensisset.

61. Hence the ablative is used with verbs of abounding and wanting (*abundare*, *redundare*, *affluere*, *circumfluere*, *scatere*, *florere*, and *vigere* in the figurative sense of *abounding in anything*; *carere*, *egere*, *indigere*, *vacare*), and the corresponding transitive verbs of *filling*, *endowing*, or *depriving*, and others of similar meaning; (*complere*, *implere*, *cumulare*, *refecere*, *satiare*, *exsatiare*, *saturare*, *stipare*, *constipare*; *afficere*, *donare*, *remunerari*, *locupletare*, *ornare*, *augere*, *tollere*; *privare*, *spoliare*, *orbare*, *fraudare*, *defraudare*, *nudare*, *exuere*, and many others).

Germania *rivis fluminibusque* abundat.

Quam Dionysio erat miserum *carere consuetudine* amicorum, *societate* victus, *sermone* omnino *familiari*.

Arcesilas philosophus cum *acumine ingenii floruit* tum admirabili quodam *lepore* dicendi.

*Consilio et auctoritate* non modo non *orbari* sed etiam *augeri* senectus solet.

NOTE 1. The adjectives *vacuus*, from *vacare*, and *refertus*, from *refecere*, are, therefore, used with the ablative, though the latter, fol-



lowing the analogy of *plenus*, with the genitive also; as, *consilium periculo vacuum*, *gladius vagina vacuus*.

*Referta Gallia negotiatorum est.*

*Xerxes refertus omnibus præmiis fortunæ.*

NOTE 2. The genitive is, sometimes, used with *eg eo*, and frequently with *indigeo*.

*Gravitas morbi facit, ut medicinæ egeamus.*

*Virtus plurimæ exercitationis indiget.*

NOTE 3. As to the varied construction of *donare*, *privare*, *spoliare*, *exuere*, and others, see § 4, 38.

NOTE 4. It will be readily perceived that, with many of these verbs, the ablative may be considered as the ablative of the instrument, especially with those which denote *to fill*.

62. *Opus est, there is need*, is either used impersonally, in which case it has, like the verbs of wanting, an ablative; e. g. *multis mihi libris opus est*; or personally, in which case the thing wanted is in the nominative; *multi mihi libri opus sunt*. This construction is most common with the neuters of pronouns and adjectives.

*Athenienses cursorem Lacedæmonem miserunt, ut nunciaret, quam celeri opus esset auxilio.*

*Themistocles ea prudentia erat, ut celeriter, quæ opus erant, reperiret.*

NOTE 1. When the thing wanted cannot be expressed by a substantive, either the accusative with the infinitive is used; or the infinitive alone, the subject being left to be explained from the connexion; or the ablative of the perfect passive participle, with or without a noun. The ablative of the supine is less common.

*Si quid erit, quod te scire opus erit, scribam.*

*Quid opus est tam valde affirmare?*

*Præquam incipias, consulto, et ubi consulueris mature, facto opus est.*

*Janitori opus esse sibi domino ejus convento extemplo ait.*

*Ita dictu opus est, si me vis salvum esse et filium.*

NOTE 2. *Usus est, there is need*, is used impersonally, but it generally occurs, in the best prose writers, without any case depending on it. Livy uses it with the dative or ablative of the relative pronoun, Quintilian, with a genitive; and the comic writers like *opus*.

*De ceteris studiis alio loco dicemus, si usus fuerit.*

Decretum est, ut Cn. Octavius reduceret naves, *quibus consuli usus non esset.*

*Proœmii non semper usus est.*

63. The following nine deponent verbs take an ablative; *utor, fruor, fungor, potior, vescor, dignor, lætor, glorior, nitor*; with their compounds, *abutor, perfruor, defungor, perfungor.*

Hannibal, quum *victoria posset uti, frui* maluit.

Qui adipisci veram gloriam volet, justitiæ *fungatur officiis.*

*Nulla re niti* decet sapientem nisi *virtute animique conscientia.*

Haud equidem *tali me dignor honore.*

NOTE 1. *Utor, fruor, fungor, potior, and vescor* are sometimes, though seldom, found with an accusative. This is the reason of the construction with the participle in *us*, which would otherwise be impossible.

Datames militare *munus fungens* primum, qualis esset, aperuit in bello.

*Ad agrum fruendum* etiam invitat atque allectat senectus.

*Ea, quæ utenda* acceperis, majore mensura, si modo possis, jubet reddere Hesiodus.

NOTE 2. *Potiri* also governs, in good writers, a genitive, especially in the phrase *rerum potiri*, to obtain supreme dominion.

Cleantes Stoicus solem dominari et *rerum potiri* putat.

NOTE 3. *Glorior* is also joined with the preposition *de*, when it signifies *to boast*, and with *in*, when it signifies *to place one's glory in anything.*

*In virtute recte gloriamur.*

NOTE 4. *Nitor* is also used with *in* and the ablative in the figurative sense; joined with *ad* or *in* and the accusative, it means to *strive after.*

*In vita Pompeii nitebatur* salus civitatis.

Optimi cujusque animus maxime *ad immortalitatem gloriæ nititur.*

NOTE 5. *Fido* and *confido* are either used with the dative or ablative; see § 4, 32.

64. The adjectives *dignus, indignus, fretus, alienus, præditus*, and *contentus*, take an ablative.

Quam multi *luce indigni* sunt, et tamen dies oritur!

*Mens est prædita motu sempiterno.*

*Quod cuique temporis ad vivendum datur, eo debet esse contentus.*

NOTE 1. *Alienus* is more frequently joined with *ab*; if used in the sense of *disinclined*, *hostile*, the preposition is rarely wanting. In the sense of *unsuitable to*, the ablative either alone, or with *ab* may be used. In the first meaning, *hostile*, the dative is sometimes used, in the second, the genitive.

*Dii sunt benefici, neque hoc alienum ducunt majestate sua.*

*Hoc a te alienissimum est.*

*Homo alienus a literis.*

*Testis id dicit, quod illi causæ maxime est alienum.*

*Quis alienum putet ejus esse dignitatis.*

NOTE 2. *Dignus* has in poets, but not in good prose writers, a genitive.

65. With verbs of *removing*, *keeping at a distance*, *delivering*, and others which imply a separation, the ablative may be used, either alone or with the prepositions *ab*, *de*, *ex*. With *pellere*, *depellere*, *expellere*, *ejicere*, *movere*, *amovere*, *demovere*, *removere*; *abire*, *exire*, *decedere*, *desistere*, *evadere*, *exulare*; *arcere*, *prohibere*, *excludere*, *intercludere*, *abstinere*; *liberare*, *solvere*, *expedire*, the preposition or the ablative alone may be used; with *exsolvere*, *exonerare*, *levare*, the ablative alone is to be preferred: the verbs which denote a difference, *differre*, *discrepare*, *distare*, *abhorrere*, *alienare* and *abalienare*, are rarely found without a preposition. When a separation from *persons* is spoken of, the preposition *ab* must always be used with the verbs first enumerated.

*Virtute Codri regis Athenienses bello liberati sunt.*

*Usu urbis prohibere peregrinos inhumanum est.*

*Apud veteres Germanos quemcunque mortalium arcere tecto nefas habebatur.*

*Tu, Jupiter, hunc a tuis aris, a tectis urbis, a manibus, a vita fortunisque civium arcebis.*

NOTE 1. Of the use of the dative with some of these verbs, because compounded with prepositions, see above, § 4, 33.

NOTE 2. *Prohibere*, to keep at a distance, to keep apart, admits of a double construction, so that either that which is kept apart, or, which is the more common, that from which it is kept apart, is put in the accusative. In the same manner *defendere* has either that which is defended, or that against which it is defended, in the accusative.

Erit humanitatis vestræ *magnum* civium *numerum* calamitate *prohibere*.

*Prohibere* prædones procul ab insula Sicilia.

NOTE 3. Poets, in imitation of the Greek, use sometimes the genitive instead of the ablative with verbs of separation, as, *cum famulis operum solutis*; and with adjectives of similar signification, as, *liber laborum*.

66. The ablative is used with *esse*, or with a substantive without *esse*, to express a quality, provided the quality is expressed, not by a substantive only, but by a substantive having an adjective or adjective pronoun joined with it.

Agesilaus *statura* fuit *humili* et *corpore exiguo*.

Omnes dicuntur tyranni, qui *potestate* sunt *perpetua* in ea civitate, quæ libertate usa est.

NOTE 1. This ablative is explained by some by the ellipsis of *præditus*, by others by that of the (not used) participle of *esse*.

NOTE 2. An attempt is sometimes made to discover and establish a difference between this ablative, and the similar use of the genitive (§ 5, 43), but unsuccessfully, as appears from those instances, in which both constructions are combined.

Neque monere te audeo, *præstanti prudentia virum*, nec confirmare *maximi animi hominem*.

Thyrum, *hominem maximi corporis terribilique facie*, optima veste textit.

67. When one or more substantives are employed to define more exactly, with a verb, (or an adjective), the manner in which a thing is done or takes place, the ablative is used with the preposition *cum*; as *literæ cum cura diligentiaque scriptæ*, *cum fide* amicitiam colere, *cum voluptate* audire; the same in signification as *diligenter* scriptæ, *fideliter* colere, *libenter* audire. If the manner is expressed by a substantive with an adjective, or adjective pronoun, the ablative alone (*ablativus modi*), or with *cum*, is used. The usual place of *cum* is between the adjective and the substantive, but it also stands first.

Epaminondas a *judicio capitis maxima* discessit *gloria*.

Sulla *maximo cum labore* Athenas expugnavit.

Verres Lampsacum venit *cum magna calamitate* et prope *perniciæ civitatis*.

NOTE 1. In some phrases, the substantive, unaccompanied by an adjective, is used without *cum*.

Omnes fere Stoici prudentissimi in disserendo sunt, et id arte faciunt.

Existima modo et ratione omnia Romæ Nævium fecisse, si hoc recte atque ordine factum videtur.

Censores vitio creati non gesserunt magistratum.

NOTE 2. Accompaniment only is not expressed by the ablative alone, but requires, as a general rule, *cum*. To the same class belong such expressions as these, servi *cum telis* comprehensi sunt; *cum ferro* in aliquem invadere; *cum occasu solis* copias educere. It is to be considered an exception that some writers, especially Cæsar and Livy, omit *cum* in certain military expressions; as, dictator *ingenti exercitu* ab urbe profectus; *exercitu haud minore*, quam quem prius habuerat, ire ad hostem pergit; *egressus omnibus capiis*.

NOTE 3. Cicero uses the participles *junctus* and *conjunctus* also without *cum*.

Repente est exorta mulieris importunæ nefaria libido non solum *dedecore* verum etiam *scelere conjuncta*.

Infinitum bellum *junctum* miserrima fuga.

68. The *point* of time is expressed by the ablative, without the preposition *in*; in answer to the question *when*?

*Qua nocte* natus Alexander est, *eadem* Dianæ Ephesiæ templum deflagavit.

Pyrri *temporibus* jam Apollo versus facere desierat.

NOTE 1. *By day, by night*, is expressed by *interdiu, noctu*; but the ablatives *die, nocte* are not uncommon. The two phrases may be combined; *die ac nocte, die noctuque, nocte et interdiu*.

NOTE 2. *In the evening*, is *vespere* or *vesperi*, from the old form *vesper, vesperis*, for which *vesper, (vesperi), and vespera* are used.

NOTE 3. *In good time*, is *in tempore* or *tempore* (anciently *tempori* or *temperi*, from which the comparative *temperius*). Otherwise the preposition *in* is added, when *tempus* denotes *difficulty*, as, *in illo tempore; hoc quidem in tempore*.

NOTE 4. *Ludis* is used without a preposition, as denoting a point of time, for *tempore ludorum; Latinis, for tempore feriarum Latinarum; gladiatoribus, for in ludis gladiatoriiis*.

NOTE 5. *Bello* alone, as well as joined with an adjective or genitive, is frequently used for *in bello*, as *bello Latino* or *bello Latinorum*.

69. When we ask *how long before?* or *how long after?* a point of time is denoted, and the time *before* and time *after* may be expressed by the ablative, followed by *ante* and *post*. But the same words governing an accusative express the

same ; e. g. *post tres annos decessit*, or, *tribus annis post*, or, *tribus post annis*. The ordinal numerals may be used, as well as the cardinal ; *post tertium annum*, and *tertio anno post*. Thus there are eight different expressions having the same meaning :

*ante, post tres annos ;*  
*ante, post tertium annum ;*  
*tres ante, post, annos ;*  
*tertium ante, post, annum ;*  
*tribus annis ante, post ;*  
*tertio anno ante, post ;*  
*tribus ante, post, annis ;*  
*tertio ante, post, anno.*

*Ante* and *post*, when thus placed after the noun, may govern an accusative of the event, from which the time is reckoned.

- Themistocles fecit idem, quod *viginti annis ante* fecerat Coriolanus.

L. Sextius primus de plebe consul factus est, *annis post Romam conditam trecentis duodenonaginta*.

Cimon *post annum quintum* in patriam revocatus est.

*Post diem tertium* gesta res est.

Fabius *tertio anno ante* consul fuerat.

NOTE 1. *Ante* and *post*, even when governing the accusative, are frequently placed after one of the accusatives, as, *aliquot post menses, paucos ante menses, tertium ante diem*.

NOTE 2. *Ante* and *post* are even found before an ablative ; and *post* is sometimes placed before such ablatives, as have obtained an adverbial signification ; though more commonly in the contrary order, as *ante annis octo, post paucis diebus ; post aliquanto, post non multo*.

NOTE 3. When *quam* with a verb is added to *post* and *ante*, we may either say, *tribus annis postquam venerat, post tres annos quam venerat, tertio anno postquam venerat, post annum tertium quam venerat* ; or with the ablative alone omitting *post* and *ante*, *tertio anno quam venerat*, all in the same sense, *three years after he came*. Instead of *quam*, *ex quo* and *cum (quum)* may be used without *post* or *ante* ; or the relative pronoun may be used agreeing with the preceding ablative.

Hamilcar *nono anno, postquam* in Hispaniam venerat, in prælio pugnando occisus est.

*Seculis multis ante* gymnasia inventa sunt, *quam* in his philosophi garrere cœperunt.

Testamentum Augusti *ante annum et quatuor menses, quam* decederet, factum ab eo virgines Vestales protulerunt.

*Octavo mense, quam* cœptum oppugnari, captum Saguntum quidam scripsere.

Quem *triduo, cum* has literas dabam, expectabam.

Ipse *octo diebus, quibus* has literas dabam, cum Lepidi copiis me conjungam.

70. When the question *how long before?* refers to the present, the length of time is expressed by *abhinc* with the accusative or ablative; e. g. *abhinc annos tres*, or, *abhinc triginta diebus*. The same is also expressed by *ante* and the pronoun *hic*, as, *ante hos tres annos, ante hæc tria sæcula*.

Demosthenes, qui *abhinc annos prope trecentos* fuit, cum Philippo facere Pythiam dicebat.

Comitia jam *abhinc triginta diebus* erant habita.

NOTE. In some expressions, the time how long before is expressed by the ablative alone with *hic* and *ille*; as, *his diebus*, in these days, that is, a few days ago; or *paucis his diebus, paucis illis diebus*.

71. When the question is *in how long time?* the answer is expressed by the ablative, yet also by *intra* with the accusative.

Agamemnon cum universa Græcia *vix decem annis* unam cepisse urbem traditur.

Multi *intra vicesimum diem* dictatura se abdicaverunt.

Gracchus centum tria oppida *intra paucos dies* in deditionem accepit.

72. The ablative, without a preposition, is used with some general designations of place; *terra marique*, by sea and land; *loco* and *locis* when they are joined with adjectives and pronouns; *hoc loco, multis locis, aliquot locis, secundo loco, meliore loco* res nostræ sunt, *illustri loco* laus tua sita est.

Tuscorum ante Romanum imperium late *terra marique* opes pascere.

Castra Gallorum *opportunis locis* erant posita.

NOTE 1. *Loco* alone, signifies *in the right place*, equivalent to *suo loco*.

Multis *loco* positis grandior atque antiquior oratio sæpe videri solet.

NOTE 2. *Loco*, joined with a genitive, denotes *instead*.

Sic a majoribus nostris accepimus prætorem quæstori suo *parentis loco* esse oportere.

NOTE 3. *Via* and *itinere*, with an adjective, are used without *in*.

Vienna equites mille *via brevioris* præmisi.

NOTE 4. The ablative, if joined with the adjective *totus*, is commonly used without *in*.

Concursabat *tota urbe* maxima multitudo.

NOTE 5. Poets allow themselves unlimited liberty in the omission of *in*.

73. The ablative is used with adjectives in the comparative degree, instead of *quam* with the nominative; or, in the construction of the accusative with the infinitive, instead of *quam* with the accusative of the subject. If the thing surpassed be in any other case than the nominative, or the accusative of the subject, *quam* must be used.

*Cicerone* nemo Romanorum fuit eloquentior.

Neminem Romanorum *Cicerone eloquentiorem* fuisse veteres judicarunt.

*Vilius* argentum est *auro*, *virtutibus* aurum.

Maluit servire gloriæ suæ *quam opibus*.

Facilius ediscimus versus *quam prosam orationem*.

Pluris *quam decem millibus* emerunt.

NOTE 1. The ablative for the accusative of the object is frequently found in poets, and sometimes in prose, especially with pronouns; but no good writer uses the ablative for *quam* with any other case. On the other hand, the nominative or accusative with *quam* is often found where the ablative might have been used.

Neminem *Lycurgo majorem* Lacedæmon genuit.

Ignoratio futurorum malorum *utilior est quam scientia*.

NOTE 2. Of a peculiar kind are such ablatives as these: *opinio*, *spe*, *nimio*, *æquo*, *necessario*, *justo*, *solito*, *dicto*, *vero*, which are to be explained by *quam opinio*, etc. *est* or *erat*.

*Opinio* omnium *majorem* animo cepi dolorem.

In oratione membrum *longius justo* tardum, *brevius instabile* est.

NOTE 3. *Quam pro* after a comparative means, *than is*, or *was to be expected in proportion to*.



*Prælium atrocius quam pro numero pugnantium editar.*

NOTE 4. The construction of *alius* with an ablative, instead of *ac*, *atque*, or *quam*, is rare, and occurs chiefly in poets.

Nos ab initio spectasse otium, nec quidquam *aliud libertate communi* quæsisse exitus declarat.

Ne putes *alium sapiente* beatum.

74. The degree of superiority or inferiority of one thing compared to another, is expressed in the ablative. *Paullo, multo, quo, eo, quanto, tanto, tantulo, aliquanto, hoc*, are to be considered as ablatives of this kind.

*Hibernia dimidio minor est quam Britannia.*

*Homines quo plura habent, eo cupiunt ampliora.*

75. The ablative is besides governed by the prepositions *a, ab, abs, (absque), clam, coram, cum, de, e* and *ex, præ, pro, sine, tenus* (which is put after its case), *in* and *sub* denoting the place where, and *super* when it signifies *concerning*. *Subter* is used without distinction with both cases, but more commonly with the accusative.

NOTE. The preposition *in* is commonly used with an ablative, after the verbs *pono, loco, colloco, statuo, constituo, consido*, although, strictly speaking, they express a motion. On the other hand, *advenire* and *adventare* are used with *in* and the accusative, or with the accusative, if joined with names of towns.

*Ægyptii ac Babylonii omnem curam in siderum cognitione posuerunt.*

*Herculem hominum fama beneficiorum memor in concilie cœlestium collocavit.*

---

## SECTION VII.

### *The Vocative.*

76. The vocative stands in no close connexion with either nouns or verbs, but is inserted, (usually after a clause, unless for the sake of strong emphasis,) to express the object to which our words are addressed. It is often joined with in-

terjections, but not necessarily, and with *o!* only in passages of strong emotion.

Urbem, urbem, *mi Rufe*, cole, et in ista luce vive.

*O dii boni*, quid est in hominis vita diu.

Quæ res unquam, *pro sancte Jupiter*, non modo in hac urbe sed in omnibus terris est gesta major.

NOTE 1. Of other cases, besides the vocative, used with interjections, see § 3, 24.

NOTE 2. The nominative is used in apposition with the vocative.

*Nate*, meæ vires, mea magna potentia *solus*.

Salve *primus* omnium parens patriæ *appellate*.

NOTE 3. Poets, in imitation of the Attic writers, sometimes use the nominative for the vocative; the same is done, in prose, in some particular phrases.

Vacuas aures mihi, *Memmius*, adhibe.

Decius consul: Agedum, inquit, *pontifex publicus* populi Romani, præi verba, quibus me pro legionibus devoveam.

Audi tu, *populus Romanus*.

NOTE 4. On the other hand, adjectives and participles are, in poets and in one particular phrase in prose, in the vocative, when the nominative would seem proper.

Stemmata quod Tusco ramum *millesime* ducis, censoremque tuum vel quod *trabeate* salutas.

*Macte* virtute esto.

---

## USE OF ADJECTIVES.

---

### SECTION VIII.

Some of the rules, regulating the use of adjectives have necessarily been anticipated in the section on the *Connexion of Subject and Predicate*.

77. The adjectives *primus*, *ultimus*, *extremus*, *postremus*, *intimus*, *summus*, *medius*, *infimus*, *imus*, *reliquus*, *ceterus*, even when they denote a part only, agree with the substantive in gender, number, and case. See § 5, 45.

Turpione Ambivio magis delectatur, qui in *prima cavea* spectat; delectatur tamen etiam, qui in *ultima*.

Antistius abdidit se in *intimam Macedoniam*.

Numa Janum ad *infimum Argiletum* indicem pacis bellicue fecit.

Jam pridem cupio Alexandriam *reliquamque Egyptum* visere.

NOTE. Even pronouns are sometimes used in this manner.

Antequam ad *eam orationem* (that part of my oration) venio, quæ est propria vestræ quæstionis.

78. Several adjectives are joined to the same substantive, *without a conjunction*, when one of them, commonly that which stands next to it, is so closely united in sense with the substantive, as to form one complex idea with it, and is defined by the other or others.

Prætori urbis negotium datum, ut *naves longas triginta veteres* reficeret.

Atticus nullos habuit hortos, *nullam suburbanam* aut *maritimam sumptuosam villam*.

Urbis Acradinæ partes *una lata via perpetua* multisque transversis divisæ sunt.

NOTE. The other adjectives thus joined to the first, which with the substantive forms one complex idea, are chiefly adjectives denoting size, number, and time, participles, pronouns, but rarely adjectives denoting a quality.

79. Several adjectives are joined by means of conjunctions, when they do not define or stand in apposition to one another.

Cum Armeniorum rege Tigra<sup>n</sup>e *grave bellum perditurnumque* gessimus.

Assentior Platoni nihil tam facile in *animos teneros atque molles* influere quam varios canendi sonos.

80. An adjective, participle, or adjective pronoun may stand for a substantive, a substantive being understood, and be connected with other adjectives, except those denoting a

quality; and even with these when such an adjective part of speech has, by usage, become a substantive.

*Erubescunt pudici etiam impudica loqui.*

*Dextræ fidei testes esse solebant.*

*Meus est natalis.*

*Murenam accusat paternus inimicus Postumius, vetus vicinus ac necessarius.*

*Omnes, qui Catilinæ incepta probabant, malum publicum alebat.*

81. Some adjectives, in the neuter gender, are used as adverbs, as, *multum, multa, nimium quantum, mirum quantum, sublime*, more rarely *recens*.

*Commentabar declamitans, idque faciebam multum etiam latine, sed græce sæpius.*

*Sales in dicendo nimium quantum valent.*

*Sonus natura sublime fertur.*

*Astragalus difficile tunditur.*

82. An adjective, qualifying the substantive, is sometimes used instead of an adverb, modifying the verb.

*Lati pacem agitabamus.*

*Priori Remo augurium venit.*

NOTE. Thus, *nullus* is used in the sense of *not at all*.

*Philotimus nullus venit.*

83. *Quam* is commonly omitted after *plus, amplius, minus*, without causing a change of the case (see § 6, 73.)

*Constabat non minus ducentos Carthaginiensium equites fuisse.*

*Rex qua sex mensibus iter fecerat, eadem minus diebus triginta in Asiam reversus est.*

84. When two adjectives or adverbs are compared, *magis* and *quam* are used; or more frequently, both adjectives and adverbs are used in the comparative.

*Si mihi facere licuerit, quod jam diu cogito, perfectam artem juris habebitis, magis magnam atque uberem quam difficilem atque obscuram.*

*Octavius Reatinus ad dicendum veniebat magis audacter quam parate.*

Pestilentia coorta, *minacior* tamen *quam periculosior*, cogitationes hominum a certaminibus publicis avertit.

Romani bella quædam *fortius quam felicius* gesserunt.

85. The second member of the comparison is omitted, when it is easily understood.

Senectus est natura *loquacior* (sc. *quam ceteræ ætates*).

Romani legibus annalibus *grandiorem* ætatem ad consulatum constituebant.

Medici *gravioribus* morbis periculosas curationes et ancipites adhibere coguntur.

NOTE. In many of these instances the comparative may be translated by *somewhat* or *too*.

Frumentum in Gallia propter siccitates *angustius* provenerat (somewhat scantily).

Voluptas cum *major* est atque *longior*, omne animi lumen extinguit (too great and too long continued).

86. *Yet* and *still*, with comparatives, are expressed in the best writers, by *etiam*; in later authors, by *adhuc*.

Ut in corporibus magnæ dissimilitudines sunt, sic in animis existunt *etiam majores* varietates.

Filiam quis habet? pecunia est opus; duas? *maiore*; plures? *maiore etiam*.

Punctum est, quod vivimus, et *adhuc* puncto *minus*.

87. The superlative with *quisque* denotes distributively each single one who possesses the quality in the highest degree.

Epicureos *doctissimus quisque* contemnit.

*Quinto quoque* anno Sicilia tota censetur.

Pecunia semper ab *amplissimo quoque clarissimoque* contempta est.

In *optimis quibusque* honoris est certamen et gloriæ.

*Optimus quisque* maxime posteritati servit.

88. The force of the superlative is increased by the addition of *multo*, *longe*, *quam*, *vel*; and by *quam*, *quantus*, *qualis*, *ut*, with *posse*.

Mihi nihil fuit optatius, quam ut *quam gratissimus* erga te esse cognoscerer.

Ex Britannis omnibus *longe* sunt *humanissimi*, qui Cantium incolunt.

In fidibus musicorum aures *vel minima* sentiunt.

Jugurtha *quam maximas potest* copias armat.

Statuo aliquem confectum tantis animi corporisque doloribus, *quanti* in hominem *maximi* cadere *possunt*.

## USE OF PRONOUNS.

### SECTION IX.

89. The genitive plural of *ego* and *tu* has two forms, *nostrum* and *nostri*, *vestrum* and *vestri*. The termination *um*, is used with partitives; in all other connexions the form in *i*. See § 5, 44, note 5.

Tenentur ii, qui ad urbis incendium, ad *vestrum omnium* cædem Romæ restiterunt.

*Quis nostrum* exercitationem ullam corporis suscipit laboriosam, nisi ut aliquid ex ea commodi consequatur.

*Nostri* melior pars animus est.

Non vereor, ne quis me hoc *vestri adhortandi causa* magnifice loqui existimet.

90. *Sui*, *sibi*, *se*, is the pronoun of the third person in a reflective sense, and is used when the subject of a proposition becomes the object of the predicate. It continues to be used through successive *dependent* propositions, as long as it refers to the subject of the leading proposition; while in *merely annexed* propositions *is* is used to refer to the leading subject.

*Ipse se quisque diligit, non ut aliquam a se ipso mercedem exigit caritatis suæ, sed quod per se sibi quisque carus est.*

Dionysius verebatur, ne, si Dionem *secum* haberet, aliquam occasionem daret *sui* opprimendi.

Tiberius Gracchus *ejusque* frater occisi sunt.

Athenienses urbem *sua*m æde Minervæ ornaverunt, *eorumque* magnificentiam mirata est posteritas.

NOTE 1. This relation is readily understood, when the dependent proposition is connected by the conjunction *that* (*ut*), or by interrogatives *who, what, where*, etc. But when the dependence is established and indicated by means of other conjunctions, such as *since, because, if, although*, a mere reference to the subject is not sufficient to use *sui*, but the dependent proposition must be modified by the subject, that is, not express a fact, but the subject's idea of the fact. It is another principle of the Latin language, hereafter to be explained, that in such propositions the verb is used in the subjunctive; as, contemnebat divitias, quod *se* felicem reddere non *possent*, or contemnebat divitias, quod *eum* felicem reddere non *poterant*. In the former the idea of the subject is given, therefore *se* and *possent*; in the latter, the fact is stated; therefore *eum* and *poterant*.

Africanus, qui suo cognomine declarat tertiam partem orbis terrarum se subegisse, tamen, si *sua* res ageretur, testimonium non diceret.

Medeam prædicant in fuga fratris sui membra in iis locis, qua *se* parens persequeretur, dissipavisse.

Verres Milesios navem poposcit, quæ *eum* præsidii causa Myndum prosequeretur.

NOTE 2. Many instances occur in which there is necessarily an obscurity to which of several subjects *sui* refers; in some cases *ipse* is used to prevent a misunderstanding; in others the connexion alone furnishes the right interpretation.

Agrippa Atticum orabat, ut *se sibi suisque* reservaret.

Romani legatos in Bithyniam miserunt, qui a rege *peterent*, ne inimicissimum *suum secum* haberet *sibique* dederet.

Jugurtha legatos ad consulem mittit, qui *ipsi* liberisque vitam peterent.

Cæsar milites incusavit, cur de *sua* virtute aut *ipsius* diligentia desperarent.

91. *Suus* is the adjective pronoun of the substantive pronoun *sui, sibi, se*, and the principles stated in the preceding rule, concerning the latter, apply strictly to the use of the former.

Themistocles servum ad Xerxem misit, ut ei nuntiaret *suis* verbis adversarios *ejus* in fuga esse.

92. On account of the reciprocal power of *sui* and *suus*, they are used even when they do not refer to the grammatical subject of the proposition.

Cui proposita sit conservatio *sui*, necesse est huic partes quoque *sui* caras esse.

Cæsarem *sua* natura mitiorem facit.

*Sui* cuique mores fingunt fortunam.

Furnium per *se* vidi libentissime.

Volaterranos in *sua* possessione retinebam.

93. The relative pronoun generally *precedes* the noun to which it refers, which is then put in the same case, and followed by *hic*, *idem*, *is*, *ipse*, which are necessary if the verbs govern different cases.

*Quam* quisque novit *artem*, in *hæc* se exerceat.

Accusator non ferendus est is, qui, *quod* in altero *vitium* reprehendit, in *eo* ipso deprehenditur.

Expectationem nostram tu vinces, si hoc statueris, *quarum* laudum gloriam adamaris; *quibus* *artibus* *eæ* laudes comparantur, in *iis* esse elaborandum.

94. The relative pronoun sometimes takes an adjective after it, which properly belongs to the antecedent.

Alvus calore, *quem* *multum* habet, omnia conficit.

Inter jocos, *quos* *inconditos* jaciunt, Romulus ac parens patriæ appellatur.

95. The relative pronoun sometimes takes a substantive in the way of apposition after it.

Eodem anno a Campanis Cumæ, *quam* Græci tum *urbem* tenebant, capiuntur.

In astrologia C. Sulpicius, in geometria Sex. Pompeius, multi in dialecticis, plures in jure civili multum operæ curæque posuerunt, *quæ* *omnes artes* in veri investigatione versantur.

96. The relative pronoun is sometimes used in the sense of *as* or *such as*, the antecedent *is*, denoting *such*, being either expressed or understood.



Nos *ii* sumus, *qui* esse debemus, id est studio digni ac literis nostris.

Spero, *quæ* tua prudentia et temperantia est, te jam, ut volumus, valere.

*Qua* es prudentia, nihil te fugiet, si meas literas diligenter legeris.

97. The relative pronoun sometimes takes its number and gender from the personal pronoun which is implied in the possessive.

Omnes laudare fortunas *meas*, *qui* gnatum haberem tali ingenio præditum.

98. *Ipse*, as distinguished from *is* and *ille*, serves emphatically to distinguish that to which it is applied from all others.

Pythagorei, si ex *iis* quæreretur, quare ita esset, respondere soliti sunt *ipse* dixit.

99. *Is* is used when something mentioned before is referred to simply and without any emphasis; *ille*, with emphasis, denoting that which is of general notoriety.

Vercingetorix respondit: summam imperii se consulto *nulli* discedentem tradidisse, ne *is* multitudinis studio ad dimicandum impelleretur.

Antipater *ille* Sidonius solitus est versus hexametros fundere ex tempore.

100. *Hic*, *iste*, and *ille* differ, as to their meaning and application, in this way. *Hic* refers to that which is near or belongs to the person speaking; *iste* to the person addressed; *ille* to some remoter person or object. Thence *hic* is sometimes called the demonstrative pronoun of the first, *iste* of the second, and *ille* of the third person.

Q. Catulus non antiquo *illo* more sed *hoc* nostro fuit eruditus.

Capitolium saxo quadrato substructum est, opus vel in *hac* magnificentia urbis conspiciendum.

Homines sapientes et *ista* auctoritate præditos, qua vos estis, his rebus mederi convenit.

101. *Quisquam*, any one, is used only in propositions which involve an universal negative, or an interrogation which has a negative force, a condition; after comparatives, after the adverb *vix*, and the preposition *sine*.

Fieri nullo modo potest, ut *quisquam* plus alterum diligat quam se.  
 An *quisquam* potest sine perturbatione mentis irasci?  
 Nihil turpius physico quam fieri sine causa *quidquam* dicere.  
 Vix *quidquam* spei est.

NOTE. *Ulus* has the same meaning as *quisquam*, but is an adjective, while *quisquam* is most commonly used substantively.

102. *Aliquis* and *quispian* are particular in their meaning, *some one, some one or other*; *quispian* increases the uncertainty implied in *aliquis*.

Hereditas est pecunia, quæ morte *alicujus* ad *quempiam* pervenit jure.

103. *Quidam* differs from *aliquis*, by implying that the object designated is definitely known, though indefinitely described.

Ut saltatori motus non quivis; sed certus *quidam* est datus; sic vita agenda est certo genere *quodam*, non quolibet.

---

## USE OF THE TENSES.

---

### SECTION X.

104. In order to determine the tense, i. e. the *time* of a verb, we must inquire both whether the action or condition to be expressed falls in the *present*, the *past*, or the *future*; and also, what was its state with reference to other actions connected with it, whether it was *completed* or *still going on*. For example, *I was writing*, and *I had written*, are both actions which fall in the past time; but their state is different. When I say *I was writing, when he came in*, I represent the action as not completed at his entrance; when

I say *I had written, when he came in*, I represent one action as already terminated, when the second took place. The same difference exists between *to-morrow I shall write*, and *to-morrow I shall have written*; between *I am writing to-day*, I am engaged in an act not yet completed, and *I have written to-day*, by which an act already terminated is expressed.

105. There are, therefore, in Latin, two tenses for each of the three divisions of time, past, present, and future; one expressing a complete, the other an incomplete action.

{ *scribo*, I write, or am writing, present time, action continuing.

{ *scripsi*, I have written, present time, action completed.

{ *scribebam*, I wrote, or was writing, past time, action continuing.

{ *scripseram*, I had written, past time, action completed.

{ *scribam*, I shall write, or be writing, future time, action continuing.

{ *scripsero*, I shall have written, future time, action completed.

*Dum vitant stulti vitia, in contraria currunt.*

*Qua tempestate Carthaginienses pleræque Africæ imperitabant, Cyrenenses quoque magni atque opulenti fuere.*

*Ut voles me esse, ita ero.*

*Eas leges, quas Cæsar nobis inspectantibus recitavit, pronuntiavit, tulit, nos evertendas putabimus?*

*Pausanias eodem loco sepultus est, ubi vitam posuerat.*

*Ut sementem feceris, ita metes.*

106. The passive has the same tenses with the same meaning, but with this difference, that they express no action, but the times and states of a condition of suffering.

{ *laudor*, I am praised, present time, condition continuing.

{ *laudatus sum*, I have been praised, present time, condition completed.

{ *laudabar*, I was praised, past time, condition continuing.

{ *laudatus eram*, I had been praised, past time, condition completed.

{ *laudabor*, I shall be praised, future time, condition continuing.

{ *laudatus ero*, I shall have been praised, future time, condition completed.

NOTE 1. Instead of *laudatus sum* and *eram*, *laudatus fui* and *fueram* were sometimes used, and *laudatus fuero* generally for *ero*; which is only an attempt to express again by the auxiliary, the completeness of the action, which is already expressed by the participle of the perfect passive. In the subjunctive likewise *laudatus fuisset* is often used for *laud. essem*.

Marius a subsellis in rostra recta ivit, idque, quod communiter *compositum fuerat*, solus edixit.

NOTE 2. The English language is destitute of a form for expressing the peculiar sense of the Latin present tense passive; namely, that the act under which the person or thing spoken of is passive, is still going forward at the time supposed. *I am being praised*, or *I am in the act of being praised*, would express this, but neither phrase is agreeable to the idiom of the English. The same remark applies to the imperfect and future passive, which express the incompleteness of that which was or will be undergone.

NOTE 3. The Latin present, joined with an adverb or other expression of past time, including the past and present, has the force of a perfect.

*Jam pridem cupio Alexandriam visere.*

107. The tenses of the present and past time, i. e. present and perfect, imperfect and pluperfect, have also a subjunctive mood; *scribam* and *scripserim*; *scriberem* and *scripsissem*; in the passive *scribar* and *scriptus sim*, *scriberer* and *scriptus essem*. The connexion in which they are respectively used will be explained hereafter, § 12; as *tenses* they do not vary from the signification of the indicative.

108. Neither the active nor the passive voice has a subjunctive of the future. When the expression of futurity is already contained in another part of the proposition, the other subjunctives supply the place of the subjunctive of the future, which is wanting; e. g. *illa de re promisit se scripturum, cum primum nuntium accepisset*. Here *accepisset* serves instead of a subjunctive of the future perfect; for in the indicative it would be, *cum primum nuntium accepero, scribam tibi*. So in the passive: *hoc tibi affirmo, si illud beneficium mihi tribuatur, me magnopere gavisurum*; where *tribuatur*, the subjunctive of the present, stands for the future; *gaudebo si mihi tributum sit, or fuerit*, where *fuerit* (from *fuerim*, not from *fuero*) is in like manner used for the subjunctive of the future. The choice of one or other of these subjunctives depends upon the tense of the leading verb in the sentence, and the complete or incomplete state of the action.

*Non committam, ut tum res judicetur, cum hæc frequentia totius Italiæ Roma discesserit.*

Turnum dixisse ferunt nullam breviorē esse cognitionem quam

inter patrem et filium, paucisque transigi verbis posse; ni *pareat* patri, *habiturum* infortunium *esse*.

Hæc profecto *vides*, quanto illustriora *futura sint*, cum aliquantum ex provincia atque ex imperio laudis *accesserit*.

De Rosciorum audacia tum me *dicturum pollicitus sum*, cum Erucii crimina *diluissem*.

NOTE. It is to be observed that in the last two examples the perfect subjunctive *accesserit* and the pluperfect *diluissem* are in English rendered by the same tense. The use of different tenses in Latin is owing to the difference of the leading verbs, *video* and *pollicitus sum*.

109. If no future has gone before, and the construction of the proposition demands the subjunctive, the participle of the future active is employed for this purpose, along with the proper tense of the verb *esse*; e. g. *non dubito, quin rediturus sit*, or *fuert*; *non dubitabam, quin rediturus esset*, or *fuisse*.

His de rebus quid acturus sis, rescribas mihi velim.

Bonum virum fingimus, qui *celaturus* Rhodios non *sit*, si id turpe iudicet.

NOTE. Compare the latter examples of 111.

110. In the passive voice, as the participle in *dus* is not properly a future, but denotes what ought to be done, a circumlocution may be employed of *futurum sit*, or *esset* with *ut*; as, *non dubito, quin futurum sit, ut laudetur*; *multi non dubitabant, quin futurum esset, ut Cæsar a Pompeio vinceretur*.

111. The *conjugatio periphrastica*, formed from the participle of the future active with the auxiliary *esse*, is used to denote that some one is about to perform an action, or meditates its performance. This can be done through all the six tenses of the verb, but the second future of this periphrastic conjugation does not occur.

Tibi de nostris rebus nihil *sum* ante *mandaturus* per literas, quam desperaro coram me tecum agere posse.

In urbis incremento semper, quantum mœnia *processura erant*, tantum termini consecrati proferebantur.

Nunc jam, quod *crediturus* tibi *fui*, omne credidi.

Æmilius Paullus Delphis inchoatas in vestibulo columnas, quibus *imposituri* statuas regis Persæ *fuert*, suis statuis victor destinavit.

Teneat oportet orator eorum, apud quos aget aut *erit acturus*, mentes, sensusque degustet.

Ut scribes quam sæpissime, ut, et, quid tu agas, et quid agatur, scire possim, et etiam quid *acturus sis*, valde te rogo.

Ne literas quidem ullas accepi, quæ me docerent, quid ageres, aut ubi te *visurus essem*.

C. Livius neminem fidelius dare posse consilium dixit quam eum, qui id alteri suaderet, quod ipse, si in eodem loco esset, *facturus fuerit*.

Aut non fato interiit Flamini exercitus; aut si fato, etiamsi obtemperasset auspiciis, idem *eventurum fuisset*.

Sanguinem pluisse senatui nuntiatum est, deorum etiam sudasse simulacra; num censes his nuntiis Thalen aut Anaxagoram *crediturum fuisse*?

NOTE. The perfect and pluperfect indicative of this periphrastic conjugation are often used in the sense of the pluperfect subjunctive.

Mazeus, si transeuntibus flumen supervenisset, haud dubie *oppressurus fuit* incompósitos.

112. The future passive participle, as it is called, forms with the tenses of the verb *esse* a peculiar conjugation through all the tenses, with the signification of necessity, not of a future condition; for *epistola scribenda est*, means not "a letter shall be written," for that would be expressed by *epistola scribetur*, but "a letter must be written."

Regulo non *fuit* Jupiter *metuendus*, ne iratus noceret, qui neque irasci solet nec nocere.

Hi tibi tres libri inter Cratippi commentarios tamquam *hospites erunt recipiendi*.

NOTE. The past tenses of this conjugation, the imperfect, perfect, and pluperfect indicative are, in conditional propositions, used for the pluperfect subjunctive.

Quæ si hoc tempore non suum diem obisset, paucis post annis tamen ei *moriendum fuit*.

113. The perfect indicative, both active and passive, has in Latin, besides its signification of an action completed in present time, that of an aorist; i. e. it is used to *relate* events, simply as happening in past time, without reference to their having been completed, or not completed, in respect

to each other; e. g. *Itaque Cæsar armis gerere rem constituit, exercitum finibus Italiæ admovit, Rubiconem transiit, Romam et ærarium occupavit, Pompeium cedentem devicit, Pompeium fugientem persequutus est, eumque in campis Pharsalicis devicit.* This is expressed in English by the use of the past tense, "Cæsar determined, marched," &c.

*Verres tum se in conspectum nautis paullisper dedit. Stetit soleatus prætor populi Romani cum pallio purpureo tunicaque talari.*

*Hoc ipso istum vestitum Siculi sæpe viderunt.*

NOTE 1. In Latin as in English, when the past is represented in a lively manner as though it were present, use is made of the present tense, instead of the aorist of narration.

*Erat in luctu senatus; scissalebat civitas publico consilio mutata veste, cum subito edicunt consules, ut ad suum vestitum senatores redirent.*

*Dimisso senatu decemviri prodeunt in concionem, abdicantque se magistratu ingenti hominum lætitia. Nuntiantur hæc plebi; legatos, quidquid in urbe hominum supererat, prosequitur. Huic multitudini læta alia turba ex castris occurrit; congratulantur libertatem concordiamque civitati restitutam.*

NOTE 2. That the present, in such instances, is by the writer himself felt to be used for the perfect, appears sometimes from the tense of dependent verbs.

*Diodorus, homo frugi ac diligens, qui sua servare vellet, ad propinquum suum scribit, ut iis, qui a Verre venissent, responderet, illud argentum se paucis illis diebus misisse Lilybæum.*

114. The Latin imperfect indicative, expressing like the English compound tense formed by the auxiliary and participle (I was speaking) an action or state continuing and not completed, at some given point of past time, is often used of actions frequently repeated, of manners, customs, and institutions formerly existing.

*Socrates dicere solebat (or dicebat) omnes in eo, quod scirent, satis esse eloquentes.*

*Anseres Romæ publice alebantur in Capitolio.*

NOTE 1. It is often optional, whether we will describe the duration of an action by the imperfect, or simply declare its past existence by the perfect; we may say, *Socrates solitus est dicere*, as well as *solebat*; the former expression declares a fact, the latter represents the

continuance and repetition of the act. The perfect may be used of a continued action, if its continuance is not the circumstance which it is meant to bring emphatically into view.

NOTE 2. In writing letters, the Romans used the imperfect or perfect (accordingly as the action is to be represented as continuing or completed), to denote what was going on at the time when they wrote, putting themselves, as it were, in the place of the person who receives the letter, and using the tense which would be proper when it comes to his hands.

*Hæc scripsi media nocte. Novi nihil erat apud nos, si quidem certa tibi afferri vis. Quæ ad eam diem, cum hæc scribebam, audiveramus, inanis rumor videbatur.*

115. The subjunctive of the perfect has not the same latitude of meaning as the indicative of this tense, but is confined to a completed action and the present time. But the imperfect of the subjunctive has the force which belongs to the perfect of the indicative, that of relating an event which has occurred in some past time, without reference to its being complete or incomplete; so that in a narrative, the imperfect of the subjunctive follows the perfect of the indicative, without implying a continuance of the action or condition.

It will be readily perceived that when I say, *Puer de tecto decidit, ut crus fregerit*, I do not relate an event as happening in past time, but speak of an event completed at the present time, and of a state now existing, the consequence of that event. When, on the other hand, I say, *Puer de tecto decidit, ut crus frangeret*, using the perfect in its narrative or aorist sense, I join the imperfect with it.

*Mulier tam vehementer lapidem de tecto dejecit, ut regis (Pyrrhi) caput et galeam perfringeret.*

*Aristides, cum tantis rebus præfuisset, in tanta paupertate decessit, ut, qui efferretur, vix reliquerit.*

*Quæ te ratio in eam spem adduxit, ut eos tibi fideles putares, quos pecunia corrupisses.*

*Romani ex loco superiore stragi ac ruina fudere Gallos, ut nunquam postea nec pars nec universi tentaverint tale pugnae genus.*

116. In the use of the futures, the Latin language is more accurate than our own. When a future action is spoken of, either in the future, or in the imperative, or in the subjunctive used imperatively, and another is joined with it, which



has not yet come to pass, the latter is also put in the future; in the first future, if the actions are supposed to continue together; in the future perfect, if the one must be completed before the other can begin. In English this verb is often put in the present tense; e. g. *faciam, si potero*, I will do it if I can; *facito hoc, ubi voles*, do this when you please.

*Adolescentes cum dare se jucunditati volent, caveant intemperantiam.*

*Ut sementem feceris, ita metes.*

*De Carthagine vereri non ante desinam, quam illam excisam esse cognovero.*

NOTE. The future perfect is sometimes used for the first future, to express haste, something future being thus represented as already past.

*Da mihi hoc, jam tibi maximam partem defensionis præcideris.*

117. All these tenses may be used in connexion, according to circumstances; as, I write now, but yesterday I was walking, *hodie scribo*, at *heri ambulabam*. But only the similar tenses, i. e. those which relate to the same time, can be made dependent on each other; that is, the tenses of the present time, namely, the present and perfect by themselves, and the tenses of the past, namely, the imperfect and pluperfect for themselves. In the doctrine of the dependence of tenses (*consecutio temporum*), regard must be had to the time; for present only can be connected with present, and past with past. The state of the action depends solely on itself, and of course is never doubtful. And now this principle is to be held firmly in view, that the perfect of itself as such, and in the subjunctive always, expresses present time; so that

*On the present and perfect the present and perfect may follow,*

*On the imperfect and pluperfect the imperfect and pluperfect;*

as, *scio, quid agas*, and *scio, quid egeris*, I know what you are doing, and I know what you have done. But *sciebam, quid ageres*, and *sciebam, quid egisses*; in English, I knew what you did, and I knew what you had done; further, *audiveram, quid ageres*, and *audiveram, quid egisses*, I had heard what you did, and I had heard what you had done.

Exstant epistolæ et Philippi ad Alexandrum et Antipatri ad Cassandrum et Antigoni ad Philippum filium, quibus *præcipiunt*, ut oratione benigna multitudinis animos ad benevolentiam *alliciant*, militesque blande appellando *deleant*.

Non *est* provincia excepta dumtaxat Africa et Sardinia, quam non *adierit* Augustus.

Barbarus nihil doli subesse putans adeo angusto mari *conflixit*, ut ejus multitudo navium explicari non *potuerit*.

Trajanus ita rem publicam *administravit*, ut omnibus principibus *merito anteferatur*.

Chabrias *vivebat* laute, et *indulgebat* sibi liberalius, quam ut invidiam vulgi *posset* effugere.

Unum illud *extimescebam*, ne quid turpiter *ficerem*, vel jam *efflarem*.

Dollabella *venerat* ipse, qui *esset* in consilio, et primus sententiam *diceret*.

Plato a Dionysio tyranno crudeliter *violatus erat*, quippe quem venundari *jussisset*.

118. A real difficulty is introduced into the simple rule given above on the connexion of the tenses, by the double signification of the Latin perfect indicative. In the preceding paragraph it has been considered (like the English) merely as a present of perfect action, but it is likewise an aorist of the past (see 113), and as such it is connected with the tenses of past time, the imperfect and the pluperfect. In this latter case it is translated in English by the imperfect. The Latin perfect, in the aorist sense, may be called the *historic perfect*, and we must add to the rule;

*On the historic perfect follows the imperfect and pluperfect;*

as, *audivi* (I heard, narrating), quid *ageres* and quid *egisses*.

Conon cum patriam obsideri audivisset, non *quæsit*, ubi ipse *tutus viveret*, sed unde præsidio *posset* esse civibus suis.

Id factum graviter tulit Indutiomarus, et, qui jam ante inimico in nos animo *fuisset*, multo gravius hoc dolore *exarsit*.

NOTE. It must be observed that, from the frequent connexion of the perfect with the imperfect of the subjunctive, it became almost an idiom of the Latin language, to use the imperfect, even where a present action was spoken of, if it were possible to conceive it as progres-

sive, and therefore as in one part past, even while another part continued.

*Adduxi enim hominem, in quo satisfacere exteris nationibus possentis.*

Quoniam, quæ subsidia novitatis haberes, et habere posses, exposui, nunc de magnitudine petitionis dicam.

119. The futures are *similar* to the ~~tenses~~ of the present. Therefore the present and perfect follow a future, and a future (of course of the periphrastic conjugation) follows the present and perfect; as, *mox intelligam*, quantum me *ames* or *amaveris*, it is impossible to say quantum me *amares* or *amasses*. It is just so with the future perfect; as, *si cognovero*, quemadmodum te *geras* or quemadmodum te *gesseris*.

*Reperiam* multos, quibus, quidquid velim, facile *persuadeam*.

Equidem miles nihil *dicam* de imperatore meo, cui præsertim gratias *sciam* ab senatu actas, quod non *desperaverit* de re publica.

Quotusquisque tam patiens *est*, ut *velit* discere, quod in usu non *sit habiturus*.

Defectiones solis et lunæ *cognitæ prædictæque sunt*, quæ, quantæ, quando *futura sint*.

120. But in as far as the four subjunctives of the periphrastic conjugation are considered as subjunctives of proper futures, it may be assumed that two of these (formed with *essem* and *fuissem*) depend on the tenses of the past; and hence the rule, that between presents and futures a reciprocal connexion exists, but between preterites and futures a partial connexion, in as much as futures may be made to depend on preterites, but not preterites on futures.

Non *verebar*, ne mea vitæ modestia parum *valitura esset* contra falsos rumores.

*Scripserat* mihi, quamobrem non *venturus esset*.

121. Thus, therefore, the entire rule on the connexion of tenses will be this :

On the tenses of the present and future, i. e. on the present, the perfect as such, and on the two futures, follow the tenses of the present, i. e. the present and perfect subjunctive; and on the tenses of the past, i. e. on the imperfect and pluperfect, and on the historic perfect, follow the tenses of the past; i. e. the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive.

## USE OF MOODS.

---

### SECTION XI.

#### *Indicative Mood.*

122. The indicative is used in every proposition, the matter of which is declared absolutely and as a fact; e. g. he walks, thou writest, I believe. No further rule can be given, the indicative being the proper mood to be used, where there is no reason for using another. Yet the following peculiarities of Latin usage, in respect to this mood, deserve notice.

123. The words *oportere, necesse esse, debere, convenire, and posse; par, æquum, consentaneum, justum, and æquius, melius, utilius esse*, and others of the same kind, are put in the *indicative* of past time, to express that something should have been done, which in fact has not been done; e. g. hoc facere *debebas*; "thou shouldst *have* done this;" longe *utilius fuit* angustias aditus occupare, "it would have been much better to seize the pass." With the participle of the future passive in *dus*, the indicative of *sum* in past time is much more commonly used than the subjunctive; e. g. Hæc via tibi ingredienda *erat*; this path *should have been* taken by thee.

Aut non suscipi bellum *oportuit*, aut geri pro dignitate populi Romani.

Tiberius Gracchus vitam, quam gloriosissime degere *potuerat*, immatura morte finivit.

Jeci fundamenta rei publicæ serius omnino, quam *decuit*.

Liberos tuos instituere atque erudire ad majorum instituta atque civitatis disciplinam, non ad tua flagitia *debuisti*.

Hoc quidem præceptum ad tollendam amicitiam valet; illud potius *præcipiendum fuit*, ut diligentiam adhiberemus in amicitiiis comparandis.

NOTE 1. The difference between the English and Latin idiom, as regards the moods, is more apparent than real; *ought* and *should* being really past *indicatives* of the verb to *owe*, and another of the same meaning, now obsolete. But as they are also used potentially in English, it is necessary to consider whether they denote a present, a past, or a contingent obligation or propriety; and express them accordingly in Latin by an indicative present, or past, or a tense of the potential mood.

NOTE 2. An obligation to do something at a given time of past time, is expressed in Latin by an infinitive of the present tense, as, *debebas hoc facere*; in English by an infinitive of past time, as, *you ought to have done this*.

124. In the consequent member of a conditional proposition, the past tenses are frequently put in the indicative, although in the conditional clause the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive has been used; e. g. *perieram, nisi tu accurrisses*.

Pons sublicius iter pæne hostibus *dedit*, ni unus vir *fuisse* Horatius Cocles.

Otacilius frumentum Syracusas misit; quod *ni* tam in tempore *subvenisset*, victoribus victisque pariter perniciofa fames *instabat*.

Cum dominatu unius omnia tenerentur, nec me angoribus *dedidi*, quibus *eram confectus, nisi* iis *restitissem*, nec rursum indignis homine docto voluptatibus.

Præclare *viceramus, nisi* spoliatum, inermem, fugientem Lepidus *recepisset* Antonium.

NOTE 1. It is sometimes possible to consider this indicative as really an indicative, denoting that a part of the action of the consequent member has taken place; e. g. *Britanni degredi paulatim et circumire terga vincentium cæperant, ni* id ipsum veritus Agricola quatuor equitum alas venientibus *opposuisset*. Jam fames quam pestilentia tristior erat, ni annonæ foret subventum. Yet in a majority of the cases, the indicative is actually used for the pluperfect subjunctive, in order to give more animation by representing as having actually happened, that which after all only exists in the mind. Hence this figure of the exchange of modes is so common in the historians.

Effigies Pisonis *traxerant* in Gemonias ac *divellebant, ni* jussu principis *protectæ forent*.

Cæcina dum sustentat aciem, suffosso equo delapsus *circumveniebatur, ni* prima legio sese *opposuisset*.

NOTE 2. It is to be observed that Cicero uses this indicative in the consequent member of a conditional proposition, only with those verbs and phrases stated above (123), which, even without a condi-

tional clause, are put in the indicative of past time; and even with these but rarely.

*Quodsi ita putasset, certe optabilius Miloni fuit dare jugulum.*

125. The indicative is commonly used after many general and indefinite expressions, some fact being implied. Such are *quisquis*, *quotquot*, *quicunque*, *quantuscunque*, *quantuluscunque*, *utut*, *utcunque*, *ubiubi*, *ubicunque*, *undeunde*, *undecunque*, *quoquo*, *quocunque*, *quaqua*, *quacunque*, and others of the same kind.

.. *Quidquid id est*, timeo Danaos et dona ferentes.

*Quoquo* modo se res *habet*, peto a te, ut tantum Hippiae commodos, quantum tua fides dignitasque patitur.

Omnino qui rei publicae praesunt, utilitatem civium sic tueantur, ut, *quaecunque agunt*, ad eam referant obliti commodorum suorum.

Regis Deiotari voluntatem et copias, *quantacunque sunt*, nostras esse duco.

126. In the same way propositions with *sive* — *sive* are in the indicative.

Nam illo loco libentissime uti soleo, *sive* quid mecum ipse *cogito*, *sive* quid aut *scribo* aut *lego*.

Tu tamen, *sive habes* aliquam spem de re publica, *sive desperas*, ea para, meditare, cogita, quae esse in eo civi ac viro debent, qui sit rem publicam in veterem dignitatem ac libertatem vindicaturus.

---

## SECTION XII.

### *Subjunctive Mood.*

127. The subjunctive is used, when a proposition is stated not as matter of fact, but as conceived by the mind.

NOTE. This is not meant as if such a proposition as *I believe*, *he guesses*, must be put in the subjunctive mood, because here a real fact, my belief, his conjecture, is stated. But when I say *I would believe*, *I might believe*, &c. the subjunctive mood expresses that my belief is not any thing actual, but something that either does not yet exist, or may never exist. So in propositions which imply a design, that which is to be effected or guarded against is put in the subjunc-

tive, as something not actual but contemplated by the mind. Illud feci, *ne putet me sibi inimicum esse*, or, *ne putaret*.

128. A difference is to be remarked between the four tenses of the subjunctive, both in conditional propositions, the conditional clause depending on *si*, *nisi*, *etsi*, *etiamsi*, *tametsi*; and when used independent, some condition being understood. The present and perfect describe some action or event, as conceived of by the mind, without necessarily implying that it does not actually exist, or may not exist; the imperfect and pluperfect exclude the idea of its actual existence; e. g. *si velit* does not exclude his actually being willing, and is followed by *possit*, *poterit*; *si vellet* implies that in point of fact he is not willing, and is followed by *posset*. So without *si*; *facerem*, I *would* do it, but I do it not; *cupiam*, I may desire, which is so far from excluding the actual desire, that it sometimes serves to express it. The imperfect and pluperfect of the subjunctive, therefore, *must* be used (with *si*, or alone); but, with a very slight change of meaning, the indicative may stand, instead of the present or the perfect subjunctive. The subjunctive is used in preference, when the event is intended to be set forth rather as something conceived of, than really existing; and with *si* and its compounds, where they have the force of *even if*, *even although*, *admitting that*, &c.; e. g. *etiamsi id non consequare*, *tamen* &c., is said more contingently and doubtfully than *etiamsi id non consequere*, or *consequere*, which bring it much nearer to reality.

Tu si hinc sis, aliter sentias.

Nisi in literis viverem, haud possem vivere.

Si hæc non gesta audiretis, sed picta videretis, tamen appareret, uter esset insidiator.

Antiochus si tam in agendo bello parere voluisset consiliis Hannibalis, quam in suscipiendo instituerat, propius Tiberi quam Thermopylis de summa imperii dimicasset.

Si ridere concessum sit, vituperetur tamen cachinnatio.

Omnia brevia tolerabilia esse debent, *etiamsi* magna sint.

Ista veritas, *etiamsi* jucunda non est, mihi tamen grata est.

Dies deficiat, *si velim* numerare, quibus bonis male evenerit, nec minus, *si commemorem*, quibus improbis optime.

129. The present and perfect of the subjunctive are used,

to soften an assertion or statement; e. g. *nemo istud tibi concedat (concesserit); dixerit quispiam*. The perfect subjunctive especially is used frequently in this way, with the force of the present. The signification does not essentially differ from that of the future indicative.

Hoc sine ulla dubitatione *confirmaverim* eloquentiam rem esse omnium difficillimam.

Excellentibus ingeniis citius *defuerit* ars, qua civem regant, quam qua hostes superent.

NOTE. The imperfect of the subjunctive of *dicere, putare, credere*, is used in the second person singular, in the sense of one might say, one might think, implying that one does not.

Romani injussu signa referunt, mæstique (*crederes* victos) redeunt in castra.

Quo postquam venerunt, mirandum in modum (*canes venaticos diceret*) ita odorabantur omnia et pervestigabant, ut, ubi quidquid esset, aliqua ratione invenirent.

130. In like manner the subjunctive of the present is used with questions, which imply a doubt respecting the probability or propriety of an action; e. g. *quis credat? quis hoc facere ausit? quid loquamur de hac re?* these are but milder expressions for *nemo credet, nemo audebit, non loquemur*.

*Quis dubitet, quin in virtute divitiæ sint?*

*Quid enumerem artium multitudinem, sine quibus vita omnino nulla esse potuisset?*

*Ubi istum invenias, qui honorem amici anteponat suo?*

131. The subjunctive of the present is also used, as a softened imperative, to express a wish, a request, a precept, or, with *ne*, a prohibition.

*Emas; non quod opus est, sed quod necesse est.*

*Meminerimus etiam adversus infimos justitiam esse servandam.*

*Imitemur nostros Brutos, Camillos, Decios; amemus patriam; pareamus senatui; consulamus bonis; id esse optimum putemus, quod erit rectissimum.*

NOTE. The notion that the subjunctive is a more mild and polite mode of command is erroneous; the fact is, that the subjunctive is rarely used in the second person instead of the imperative; but the



subjunctive in the third person is common, because the imperative is defective in that person.

*Sit* igitur sermo lenis minimeque pertinax; *insit* in eo lepos; nec vero, tamquam in possessionem venerit, *excludat* alios, sed cum in reliquis rebus tum in sermone communi vicissitudinem non iniquam *putet*, ac *videat* imprimis, quibus de rebus loquatur; si seriis, severitatem *adhibeat*; si jocosis, leporem.

132. All propositions, in which a *purpose* or *object* is expressed, take the subjunctive. The conjunctions, *ut*, *ne*, *quo*, *quin*, *quominus*, serve to connect such propositions, and therefore govern a subjunctive, the tense of which depends upon that of the leading verb. See § 10, 121.

133. *Ut*, signifying *in order that*, *so that*, *supposing that*, *although*, takes a subjunctive after it. It either contains a reference to something future, which is the object, purpose, or effect of another action, or it more exactly defines the state or nature of a thing, with such words as *sic*, *ita*, *tam*, *talis*, *tantus*, *ejusmodi*, preceding.

Edimus, *ut* vivamus, non vivimus, *ut* edamus.

Sol efficit, *ut* omnia floreat.

Adeo Pylades Orestem dilexit, *ut* pro eo mori *paratus* esset.

*Ut* desint vires, tamen est laudanda voluntas.

134. *Ne*, *in order that not*, *lest*, expresses a negative purpose, i. e. that something is to be guarded against; e. g. cura, *ne* denuo in morbum incidas: it is therefore not equivalent to *ut non*, when *ut* expresses a consequence or an effect; e. g. tum forte ægrotabam, *ut* ad nuptias tuas venire *non* possem; where *ne* could not have been used.

Scipio in Linterninum concessit certo consilio, *ne* ad causam dicendam *adesset*.

Cimon nunquam in hortis custodem imposuit, *ne* quis *impediretur*, quominus ejus rebus, quibus quisque vellet, frueretur.

Nec ita claudenda est res familiaris, *ut* eam benignitas aperire *non possit*; nec ita reseranda, ut pateat omnibus.

135. We have here to remark a peculiarity of the Latin language, which considers the verbs of *fearing* as among those which imply a purpose. After the verbs *metuo*, *timeo*, *vereor*, *ne* is therefore used, when the following verb expresses

a result contrary to our wish, *ut* when it is agreeable to it; e. g. *metuo, ne frustra laborem susceperis*; I fear *that* you have undertaken this labor in vain. *Vereor, ut mature veniat*; I fear that he may *not* come in time. *Ne*, therefore, after these verbs, must be rendered by *that*, and *ut* by *that not*. This rule is not limited to verbs, but equally applies to phrases, substantives, and adjectives.

*Metuo, ne, dum minuire velim laborem, augeam.*

Adulatores, si quem laudant, *vereri* se dicunt, *ut* illius facta verbis consequi possint.

*Vereor, ut* satis diligenter actum in senatu sit de literis meis.

*Non est periculum*, qui leonem aut taurum pingat egregie, *ne* idem in multis aliis quadrupedibus facere *non possit*.

Certe, *ne lassescat* fortuna, *metus* est.

Est et in *metu* peregrinantium, *ut tentent* valetudinem aquæ ignotæ.

Bomilcar timore socii *anxius, ne* omisso veteri consilio novum *quereret*, literas ad eum mittit.

NOTE 1. *Neve* or *neu* is compounded of *ne* and *ve*, and means *or that not, and that not*; it must not, therefore, be confounded with *neque*; *neque* answers to *non*, *neve* to *ne*.

Cæsar milites cohortatus, *uti* suæ pristinæ virtutis memoriam retineant, *neu* perturbarentur animo.

NOTE 2. Instead of *ne, ut ne* is frequently found.

*Non peto, ut decernatur* aliquid novi, quod solet esse difficilium, *sed ut ne* quid novi decernatur.

In illam curam incumbe, mi Plance, *ut ne* qua scintilla teterrimi belli relinquatur.

NOTE 3. *Ne non*, after verbs of *fearing*, is equivalent to *ut*, the negatives cancelling each other.

*Non sum veritus, ne* sustinere tua in me beneficia *non* possim.

*Vereor, ne* consolatio nulla possit vera reperiri.

Unum *vereor, ne* senatus Pompeium *nolit* dimittere.

136. *Quo* is properly the ablative of the pronoun relative, and stands for *ut eo*; in order *that, that by this means*; it is commonly joined with the comparative. *Non quo*, is *not as if*, instead of which *non quod* also is used; or, with a negative sense, *not as if not, non quin, or non quo non*, answering to

which, in the subsequent part of the sentence, is *sed quod*, or *sed quia*, but *because*, or a proposition with *ut*.

Illum cohortari non intermittemus, *quo* indies longius discendo exercendoque se *procedat*.

Ager non semel aratur, *quo* meliores fructus *possit* et grandiores edere.

- Legem brevem esse oportet, *quo* facilius ab imperitis *teneatur*.

Ad te literas dedi, *non quo* haberem magnopere, quod scriberem, *sed ut* tecum loquerer absens.

Mihi quidem laudabilia videntur omnia, quæ sine venditione et sine populo teste fiunt; *non quod* fugiendus sit, *sed* tamen nullum theatrum virtuti conscientia majus est.

Sæpe soleo audire Roscium, cum ita dicat se adhuc reperire discipulum, quem quidem probaret, neminem; *non quo non essent* quidam probabiles, *sed quia*, si aliquid modo esset vitii, id ferre ipse non posset.

Consilium tuum reprehendere non audeo, *non quin* ab eo *dissentiam*, *sed quod* ea te sapientiæ esse judicem, ut meum consilium non anteponom tuo.

NOTE. This use of *non quo* was formerly questioned as incorrect, but is now established. It cannot, however, be denied, that *non quod*, *non eo quod*, *non ideo quod*, *non quoniam*, and in later writers *non quia*, are more frequent.

137. *Quin* is used after negative propositions, or doubting questions, which carry a negative sense, in two ways. First, for *qui non*, *quæ non*, *quod non* (which may equally well be used), after *nemo*, *nullus*, *nihil*—*est*, *reperitur*, *invenitur*, *vix est*, *ægre reperitur*. Secondly, after *non dubito*, *non est dubium*, *facere non possum*, *feri non potest*, *nihil* (or *haud multum*, *haud procul*) *abest*; *nihil prætermitto*, *non recuso*, *tenere me or temperare mihi non possum*, and other negative propositions, with which also *vix* and *ægre* may be joined.

Quis igitur dubitet, *quin* in virtute divitiæ sint?

Nihil tam difficile est, *quin* querendo *possit* investigari.

Ego nihil prætermisi, *quin* Pompeium a Cæsaris conjunctione *avocarem*.

Infesta concio *vix* inhiberi potuit, *quin* protinus saxa in Polemonem *jaceret*.

NOTE 1. *Quin* is also used for the accusative *quod non*, but very seldom for *quem non*.

Nego in Sicilia quidquam fuisse, *quin* *conquisierit*.

NOTE 2. *Quin* is used in another sense with the indicative, as a question and exhortation, being evidently compounded of *qui non*.

*Quin* *consendimus* equos?

*Quin* *continentis* vocem, indicem stultitiæ vestræ?

*Quin* *igitur* *ulciscimur* Græciam, et urbi *faces* *subdimus*?

NOTE 3. Closely connected with the preceding use of *quin*, is that with the imperative and first person plural of the subjunctive.

*Quin* *dic* statim.

*Quin* *sic attendite*, iudices.

*Quin* *experiamur*.

NOTE 4. After *dubito* and *non dubito* in the sense of *scruple*, the infinitive properly follows, though in a few passages of Cicero *quin* is used in this sense. But after *non dubitare*, signifying *not to doubt that*, it is less agreeable to good usage to employ the infinitive, than the subjunctive with *quin*, though an exception occurs in Cicero.

Is, qui domino inspectante *non dubitavit* ædificium *extruere* in alieno.

Nemo *dubitabat*, *quin* voluntatem *spectaret* ejus, quem statim de capite suo putaret judicaturum.

*Dubitatis*, iudices, *quin* ab hoc ignotissimo Phryge nobilissimum civem *vindicetis*?

Pompeius *non dubitat* ea, quæ de re publica nunc sentiât, mihi valde *probari* (for *quin* ea mihi *probentur*.)

NOTE 5. *I doubt whether*, is *dubito num*; for *dubito an* has, like *nescio an* and *haud scio an*, an affirmative sense.

Si per se virtus sine fortuna ponderanda sit, *dubito, an* hunc primum omnium ponam.

*Dubito, num* idem tibi suadere debeam.

138. *Quominus*, for *ut eo minus* (in order that not), is used after verbs which express a hindrance, where also *ne*, and, if a negative precedes, *quin* may be used. Such verbs are *arcere*, *defendere* (to keep off), *detertere*, *impedire*, *intercedere*, *obstare*, *officere*, *prohibere*, *recusare*, *repugnare*, *vetare*, and many others which have a similar meaning.

Cimon nunquam in hortis custodem imposuit, ne quis *impediretur*, *quominus* ejus rebus, quibus quisque vellet, *frueretur*.

Parmenio detertere regem voluit, *quominus* medicamentum *biberet*, quod medicus dare constituerat.

Memoria pessimi proximo bello exempli *terrebat* consules, ne rem *committerent* eo, ubi duæ simul acies timendæ essent

Sulpicius *intercesserat*, ne exules *reducerentur*.

- Hanno neque intercludi ab Agrigento, nec, *quin* *crumperet*, ubi vellet, *prohiberi* poterat.

NOTE. With *prohibere*, *impedire*, and *vetare*, the infinitive is not unfrequently used; and once *ut* is found in Cicero.

Hoc *fieri* in provincia nulla lex *vetat*.

*Prohibentur* parentes *adire* ad filios, *prohibentur* liberis suis cibum vestitumque *ferre*.

Quid est igitur, quod me *impediat* ea, quæ mihi probabilia videantur, *sequi*.

Di *prohibeant*, judices, *ut* hoc, quod majores consilium publicum vocari voluerunt, præsidium sectorum existimetur.

139. The particles *utinam* and *o si*, expressing a wish, are connected with the present and perfect subjunctive, when the fulfilment of the wish is to be considered possible, or at least not impossible; and with the imperfect and pluperfect, when it is to be considered impossible.

*Utinam* conata efficere *possim*.

*Utinam* tam facile vera invenire *possem*, quam falsa convincere.

*Utinam* in Ti. Graccho Cajoque Carbone talis mens ad rem publicam bene gerendam *fuisse*t, quale ingenium ad bene dicendum fuit.

140. The subjunctive is used in the intermediate clauses after relatives, and after conjunctions, if the clause is meant to express the thought or the discourse of another. For the sake of greater perspicuity, the cases where such intermediate clauses occur, will be mentioned separately.

141. Intermediate clauses in the construction of the accusative with the infinitive. Here the rule is, if the clause conveys the thought or discourse of the subject spoken of, or if it necessarily belongs to the accusative with the infinitive as an essential part, then the verb of that clause must be in the subjunctive.

Socrates dicere solebat, omnes in eo, *quod scirent*, satis esse eloquentes.

Quid potest esse tam apertum tamque perspicuum, cum cælum suspeximus, cœlestiaque contemplati sumus, quam esse aliquod numen præstantissimæ mentis, *quo hæc regantur*.

Quis confidit sēper sibi illud stabile et firmum permansurum, *quod fragile et caducum sit*.

Credidit Quintius eum, *qui orationem bonorum imitaretur*, facta quoque imitaturum.

Atticum ipsum vere gloriantem audiavi se nunquam cum sorore in similitudine fuisse, *quam prope æqualem habebat*.

Cato mirari se aiebat, *quod non rideret* haruspex, haruspiciem cum vidisset.

Socrates solitum ajunt dicere perfectum sibi opus esse, *si quis satis esset conciliatus* cohortatione sua ad studium cognoscendæ percipiendæque virtutis; *quibus* enim id *persuasum esset*, ut nihil malent se esse quam bonos viros, iis reliquam facilem esse doctrinam.

142. When a proposition depends on another expressed in the subjunctive mood, the subjunctive is used in the dependent proposition, if it forms an essential part of the leading proposition, being included in the object, the purpose, or the circumstances supposed.

Rex imperavit, ut, quæ bello opus *essent*, pararentur.

Eo simus animo, ut nihil in malis ducamus, *quod sit* a deo immortali constitutum.

Si aliter accidisset, qui possem queri, cum mihi nihil improvise nec gravius, *quam expectavissem*, pro tantis meis factis evenisset.

Breviter dicendum est, ne in hujusmodi rebus diutius, *quam ratio præcipiendi postulet*, commoremur.

143. When a proposition, containing the statement of a fact, and therefore being in the indicative mood, has another dependent upon it, connected by a causal conjunction or relative, in which something is alleged as the sentiment or language of the person spoken of, or some other, and not of the writer, the dependent proposition is in the subjunctive mood. By the proposition: noctu ambulabat in publico Themistocles, *quod somnum capere non posset*; it is asserted, that Themistocles himself assigned that reason. If the

writer will give the reason as his own remark, he must say *poterat* in the indicative, as well as *ambulabat*.

Socrates accusatus est, *quod corrumperet* juventutem.

Aristides nonne ob eam causam expulsus est patria, *quod præter modum justus esset*?

Recte Socrates exsecrari eum solebat, qui primus utilitatem a natura *sejunctisset*.

The clause, introduced by *quod corrumperet*, is the assertion of the accusers; in the second example, the subjunctive expresses, that the reason was given by the Athenians according to the well-known story, but does not decide whether he was in reality so just or not. With the indicative it would not have been so.

NOTE 1. When such a dependent clause is announced as coming from the mind of the subject in the leading proposition, or is given as his remark, all references which are made to that subject by means of pronouns must be made by the reflective pronoun *sui, sibi, se*, and the possessive derived from it, *suus*. It is not so in English. Thus: Rex militi aperuit, *quis esset*, multa pollicena, *si se* conservasset. In English *him*.

Quædam Italiæ civitates diem, quo primum ad *se venisset* Augustus, initium anni fecerunt.

Ex prælio ad Trasimenum sex millia ferme primi agminis ignari omnium, quæ post *se agerentur*, ex saltu evasere.

Tum ei dormienti idem ille visus est rogare, ut, quoniam *sibi* vivo non subvenisset, mortem *suam* ne inultam esse pateretur.

NOTE 2. Cicero frequently uses the verbs *dico, puto, arbitror*, and others of the same meaning, in the subjunctive by a sort of attraction, although strictly this mood belongs to the verb which expresses what was thought or said.

Cum enim Hannibalis permissu exisset de castris, rediit paullo post, *quod se oblitum* nescio quid *diceret* (for *quod* nescio quid *oblitus esset*).

Cui cum esset nuntiatum, *quod illum* iratum *allaturum* ad se aliquid contra patrem *arbitraretur*, surrexit e lectulo (for *quod* ille iratus *allaturus esset* ad se aliquid contra patrem).

144. All sentences which contain an indirect question, i. e. which do not put a question, but state the subject of a question, dependent upon some other verb or proposition, are in the subjunctive mood. All the words which are used for direct questions, with the indicative mood, have in this

way a subjunctive; *quis, quæ, quid; qui, quæ, quod; quot, qualis, quantus, quam, ubi, unde, quare, cur, uter, quo, quomodo, utrum, an, ne* (enclitic), *num*.

*Sæpe ne utile quidem est scire, quid futurum sit.*

*Qualis sit animus, ipse animus nescit.*

*Incertum est, quo te loco mors expectet.*

*Tarquinius Superbus Prisci Tarquinii regis filius neposne fuerit, parum liquet.*

NOTE 1. There are a few exceptions to this rule in which the indicative occurs, but they are of no weight compared to the innumerable instances in which the subjunctive is used.

NOTE 2. As to the double question, *whether — or*, whether direct or indirect, it is to be remarked that *or* is never expressed by *aut*, but by *an* or the enclitic *ne*. The first question may be introduced by *utrum, num*, or likewise by *ne*, or it may stand without any interrogative particle. So that there is a *fourfold* form of those double interrogatives:

1. <i>utrum (num)</i>	— <i>an</i>
2.	— <i>an</i>
3. <i>ne</i> enclitic	— <i>an</i>
4.	— <i>ne</i> enclitic.

*Postrema syllaba brevis an longa sit, ne in versu quidem refert.*

*Refert, oratorem qui audiant, senatus an populus an iudices, frequentes an pauci an singuli.*

*Albus aterne fueris, ignorabat.*

*Coriolano Veturia: Sine, priusquam complexum accipio, sciam, inquit, ad hostem an ad filium venerim, captiva matris in castris tuis sim.*

*Quæritur, virtus suamne propter dignitatem an propter fructus aliquos expetatur.*

*Pompeius humanitate tanta est, ut difficile dictu sit, utrum hostes magis virtutem ejus pugnantes timuerint, an mansuetudinem victi dilexerint.*

*Utrum tandem existimas facilius fuisse, Tubero, Ligarium ex Africa exire, an vos in Africam non venire?*

*Illud considerandum videri solet, num propter imbecillitatem atque inopiam desiderata sit amicitia, an esset antiquior et pulchrior et magis a natura ipsa profecta alia causa.*

*Num igitur, si cui fundus inspiciendus sit, Magonis Karthaginiensis sunt libri perdiscendi, an hac communi intelligentia contenti esse possumus?*



NOTE 3. If in the second case *or not* stands without its own verb, *necne* or *an minus* are commonly used; but *an non* when the former verb is repeated. It is to be observed, however, that there are many exceptions to both parts of this rule.

Sunt hæc tua verba *necne*?

Quid *possit* effici *necne*, maxime ex causis iis, quæ quamque rem efficiant, est videndum.

Dicam huic, *an non* dicam?

Dii ita vos potentes hujus consilii fecerunt, ut, Latium deinde, *an non sit*, in vestra manu posuerint.

Hoc doce, doleam, *necne doleam*, nihil interesse.

Quæritur, Corinthiis bellum indicamus, *an non*.

Deliberet renunciæ hodie mihi, velitne, *an non*.

145. Relative pronouns and relative adverbs are used with the subjunctive (besides the cases already mentioned, 141 – 143), when the proposition which they introduce does not merely contain some additional descriptive circumstance, but expresses a consequence, a defining circumstance, or a purpose and motive.

NOTE. In the sentence, miles, *quem* metus mortis non *perturbaret*, the relative does not merely introduce a circumstance, descriptive of an individual already mentioned to have been a soldier, but ascribes to him a degree of courage, of which the consequence was, that he could not be alarmed with the fear of death. When I say, O miserum senem, *qui* mortem contemnendam esse in tam longa ætate non *viderit*! *qui non viderit* is not merely descriptive of the old man, but contains the reason why the epithet *miser* is applied to him. In English, the Latin relative governing the subjunctive is usually expressed by some other part of speech; e. g. a soldier *not to be* disturbed by the fear of death. O wretched old man *not to have* learnt! &c.

The following are the several cases of this use of the relative with a subjunctive.

146. When a demonstrative, *sic, ita, tam, talis, is* (in the sense of such), *hujusmodi, &c.* has gone before, and the relative which follows can be resolved by *ut*, so that *cujus* is equivalent to *ut mei, tui, sui, illius, ejus*; *cui*, to *ut* with the dative; *quem*, to *ut* with the accusative, and so in the plural.

Multæ res sunt *ejusmodi, quarum* exitus nemo providere *possit*.

Qui potest temperantiam laudare *is*, qui summum bonum in voluntate ponat?

Non sumus *ii, quibus* nihil verum esse *videatur*, sed *ii, qui* omnibus veris falsa quædam adjuncta esse *dicamus*.

In C. Cœlio fuit eloquentiæ *tantum*, *quod esset* in re publica ipsius dignitati satis.

Nihil *tanti* fuit, *quo venderemus* fidem nostram et libertatem.

Nulla gens *tam* fera, nemo omnium *tam* immanis est, *cujus* mentem non *imbuerit* deorum opinio.

Innocentia est affectio *talis* animi, *quæ* noceat nemini.

Habetis *eum* consulem, *qui* parere vestris decretis non *dubitet*.

NOTE. The person of the verb connected with *qui* depends upon the preceding clause.

Non sum *ego is* consul, *qui* ut plerique nefas *esse* arbitrer Gracchos laudare.

Denique *te* noli oblivisci Ciceronem *esse* et *eum*, *qui* aliis *consueveris* præcipere.

147. Even when no demonstrative precedes, the relative sometimes takes a subjunctive mood, if a demonstrative be implied.

Nonne satius est mutum *esse*, quam, *quod* nemo *intelligat*, dicere.

Nunc dicis aliquid, *quod* ad rem *pertineat*.

Audies ex me fortasse, *quod* non omnes *probent*.

Mea quidem sententia paci, *quæ* nihil *habitura sit* insidiarum, semper est consulendum.

Oratorem plane perfectum, et *cui* nihil admodum *desit*, Demosthenem facile dixeris.

Inter bellorum magnorum curas intercessit res parva dictu, sed *quæ* studiis in magnum certamen *excesserit*.

Tamen ante Periclem, *cujus* scripta *quædam* feruntur, et Thucydidem, qui non nascentibus Athenis sed jam adultis fuerunt, *litera* nulla est, *quæ* quidem ornatum aliquem *habeat*, et oratoris *esse videatur*.

148. The subjunctive is used after comparatives with *quam* *qui* in all its cases.

*Major* sum, *quam* *cui possit* fortuna nocere, i. e. *quam* ut *mihi* possit nocere.

Philippo insueto vera audire *ferocior* Æmilii oratio visa est, *quam* *quæ* habenda apud regem *esset*.

*Majus* gaudium fuit, *quam* *quod* universum homines *caperent*.

*Campani majora deliquerant, quam quibus ignosci posset.*

*Macedones et majores et magis ramosas arbores cædebant, quam quas ferre cum armis miles posset.*

NOTE. The subjunctive is used after a comparative and *quam*, even without a relative pronoun.

Postea quidquid erat oneris in nautis remigibusque exigendis, in frumenta imperando, Segestanis præter ceteros imponebat aliquanto *amplius, quam ferre possent.*

Zeno Eleates perpeusus est omnia potius, quam conscios delendæ tyrannidis indicaret.

Pausanias epulabatur more Persarum *luxuriosius, quam*, qui aderant, ferre *possent.*

149. With indefinite general expressions (both affirmative and negative) the relative, introducing the circumstance which characterizes the class indefinitely referred to, takes the subjunctive after it. Such expressions are *est, sunt, reperiuntur, inveniuntur, existunt, exoriuntur* (supply *homines*); *est ubi, est unde*; general negatives, *nemo, nullus, nihil est*; interrogative expressions, implying a negative, *quis est, quid est, qui, quæ, quod* (interrogative), *quotusquisque, quantum est*, and similar phrases. A demonstrative can always be supplied before the relative.

*Sunt, qui censeant* una animum et corpus occidere animumque in corpore extingui.

*Nihil est, quod* tam miseros faciat quam impietas et scelus.

*Quotus enim quisque est, cui* sapientia omnibus omnium divitiis præponenda videatur?

*Quæ latebra est, in quam* non intret metus mortis?

*Quis est, qui* utilia fugiat.

*Quotus quisque est, qui* voluptatem neget esse bonum.

*Helvetiis omnibus fructibus amissis domi nihil erat, quo* famem tolerarent.

*Reperies* multos, *quibus* periculosa et calida consilia quietis et cogitatis et splendidiora et majora *videantur.*

NOTE 1. The same is the case with these expressions; *est quod*, there is reason why; *non est, quod, nihil est, quod* (or *quare, or cur*), there is no reason why; *quid est, quod, quid est, cur*, what reason is there why; *habeo or non habeo, quod dicam*, I have something, or I have nothing to say.

*In viam quod te des hoc tempore, nihil est.*

*Quid tandem est, cur festines?*

*Si unquam ante alias ullo in bello fuit, quod diis immortalibus gratias ageretis, hesternum id prælum fuit.*

*Non est, quod te pudeat sapienti assentiri.*

*Nihil est, quod quisquam magnitudinem artium pertimescat.*

*Non habeo, quod quem accusem meorum.*

*Quid habes, quod reprehendas?*

NOTE 2. As the use of the subjunctive in these expressions depends on the relative's characterizing the class which is indefinitely referred to, the indicative is used, if there be anything which fixes the verb to a definite person or persons.

*Sunt nonnullæ disciplinæ, quæ propositis bonorum et malorum finibus officium omne pervertunt.*

*Sunt bestię quædam, in quibus inest aliquid simile virtutis.*

NOTE 3. There are instances, however, where after such expressions when used definitely, the subjunctive occurs, and, on the other hand, when used indefinitely, the indicative; yet the latter is to be considered a grecism, and generally confined to poets.

*Sunt enim permulti optimi viri, qui valetudinis causa in hæc loca veniant.* (Yet in the same letter Cicero says: *sunt enim permulti optimi viri, qui valetudinis causa in his locis conveniunt.*)

150. When the proposition introduced by the relative contains the reason of what goes before, the subjunctive is used.

*O fortunate adolescens, qui tuæ virtutis Homerum præconem inveneris.*

*Caninius fuit mirifica vigilantia, qui suo toto consulatu somnum non viderit.*

*Quem ardorem studii censetis fuisse in Archimede, qui, dum in pulvere quædam describit attentius, ne patriam quidem captam esse senserit?*

*O magna vis veritatis, quæ contra hominum ingenia facile se per se ipsa defendat.*

*Nunquam laudari satis digne poterit philosophia, cui qui pareat, omne tempus ætatis sine molestia possit degere.*

*Tarquinio quid impudentius, qui bellum gereret cum iis, qui ejus non tulerant superbiam.*

NOTE. What is thus expressed by *qui* alone, is more forcibly expressed by *ut qui*, *quippe qui*, *utpote qui*, in all cases.

Convivia cum patre non inibat, *quippe qui* ne in oppidum quidem nisi perraro *veniret*.

Plato a Dionysio tyranno crudeliter violatus est, *quippe quem* venundari *jussisset*.

Sunt homines natura curiosi, *ut qui* sermunculis etiam fabellisque *ducantur*.

A Catilina in Galliam properante Antonius non procul aberat, *utpote qui* magno exercitu locis æquioribus expedito in fuga *sequeretur*.

151. When the proposition introduced by the relative expresses the end and motive of the action mentioned in the preceding proposition, so that *ut* might be substituted for it, the verb must be in the subjunctive mood.

Sunt autem multi, qui eripiunt aliis, *quod* aliis *largiantur*.

Populus Romanus sibi tribunos plebis creavit, *per quos* contra senatum et consules tutus esse *posset*.

Super tabernaculum regis, *unde* ab omnibus conspici *posset*, imago solis crystallo inclusa fulgebant.

Socrates, cum ei scriptam orationem disertissimus orator Lysias attulisset, *quam*, si ei videretur, *edisceret*, ut ea pro se in judicio uteretur, non invitatus legit, et commode scriptam esse dixit.

Messanam sibi Verres urbem delegerat, *quam haberet* adjutricem scelerum.

In funeribus Atheniensium sublata erat celebritas virorum ac mulierum, *quo* lamentatio *minueretur*.

Non oris causa modo homines æquum fuit sibi habere speculum, *ubi* os *contemplantur* suum, sed *qui* perspicere *possent* cor.

152. After the adjectives *dignus*, *indignus*, *aptus*, and *idoneus*, the relative with the subjunctive is commonly used; as, *dignus* est, *cujus* exemplum *imitere*, he deserves that you should imitate his example; *indignus* est, *qui* *laudetur*.

Voluptas non est *digna*, ad *quam* sapiens *respiciat*.

Qui modeste paret, videtur, *qui* aliquando *imperet*, *dignus* esse.

Forsitan non *indigni* sumus, *qui* nobismet ipsi multam *irrogemus*.

Academici et Peripatetici mentem volebant rerum esse judicem; *solan* censebant *idoneam*, *cui* *crederetur*.

In Catone majore Catonem induxi senem disputantem, quia nulla videbatur aptior persona, quæ de ætate loqueretur.

153. Lastly the subjunctive is sometimes used in a narrative, after relative pronouns and adverbs, in the imperfect and pluperfect, when a repeated action is spoken of.

*Quemcunque* lictor *prehendisset*, tribunus mitti jubebat.

Semper habiti sunt fortissimi, *qui* summam imperii *potirentur*.

Consilium et modum adhibendo, *ubi* res *posceret*, priores erant.

154. It has been already observed (141–143), that all conjunctions (especially the causal) take the subjunctive, when they stand in clauses conveying the sentiment or the words of another. Further: of the subjunctive with *si* and its compounds, see 128 of this section. It remains to speak of those conjunctions, which of themselves require an indicative or a subjunctive mood. They are commonly of such a kind, that the reason for using one or the other is easily discoverable from the connexion of the ideas.

155. The particles expressing a wish, *utinam*, *o si*, *ut*, take the subjunctive, because the matter exists only in the mind; but with this difference in the use of the tenses, that the present and perfect are used of possible things, the imperfect and pluperfect of such as are esteemed impossible.

*Utinam* tam facile vera invenire *possem* quam falsa convincere!

*Utinam* modo conata efficere *possim*!

*O si* angulus ille proximus *accedat*, qui nunc denormat agellum!

*O si* urnam argenti fors quæ mihi *monstret*!

*Ut* te omnes dii dæque *perduint*!

*Ut* dolor *pariat*, quod jam diu parturit!

NOTE. *Oh that not* is properly *utinam ne*; but *utinam non* is also found in Cicero.

*Illud utinam ne* vere scriberem.

Hæc ad te die natali meo scripsi, quo *utinam susceptus non essem*, aut *ne* quid ex eadem matre postea natum esset!

156. *Quasi*, *quam si*, *velut*, *tanquam*, *ac si*, just as if; *dummodo*, provided only (for which *dum* and *modo* alone are used), and joined with a negation, *dummodo ne*, *dum ne*, *modo ne*, always denote something supposed, as distinguished

from something real, and therefore admit only a subjunctive.

Sic cogitandum est, *tamquam* aliquis in pectus intimum inspicere possit.

Multi omnia recta et honesta negligunt, *dummodo* potentiam consequantur.

Stultissimum est in luctu capillum evellere, *quasi* calvitio mœror levetur.

Sic Plancius quæstor est factus, *quam si esset* summo loco natus.

Me juvat, *velut* ipse in parte laboris ac periculi fuerim, ad finem belli Punici pervenisse.

Milites, quis impugnandus agger, *ut si* murum succederent, gravibus superne ictibus conflictabantur.

Caligula tragicum illud subinde jactabat: oderint, *dum* metuant.

Manent ingenia senibus, *modo* permaneat studium et industria.

Gallia omnes æquo animo belli patitur injurias, *dummodo* repellat periculum servitutis.

*Dum* ille *ne sis*, quem ego esse nolo, sis mea causa, qui lubet.

Mediocritas placet Peripateticis, et recte placet, *modo ne* laudarent iracundiam.

Sit summa in jure dicendo severitas, *dummodo* ea *ne* varietur gratia, sed conservetur æquabilis.

NOTE. The subjunctive is for the same reason used after *non quo*, *non eo quod*, *non ideo quod*, *non quia*, generally followed by another clause with *sed quod* or *sed quia* and the indicative, because in this the real reason is assigned. See 136.

Pugiles vero, etiam cum feriunt adversarium, in jactandis cæstibus ingemiscunt, *non quod* doleant animum *succumbant*, *sed quia* profunda voce omne corpus *intenditur*, *venitque* plaga vehementior.

157. *Quamvis*, distinguished from *quamquam*, is used with the subjunctive, when it signifies *however much*, like *quantumvis* and *quamlibet*. *Licet*, although properly a verb, but which has become a conjunction, *although*, always takes the subjunctive mood. *Ut* in the signification, *although*, takes the subjunctive.

Homines, *quamvis* in turbidis rebus *sint*, tamen, si modo homines sunt, interdum animis relaxantur.

Quod turpe est, id, *quamvis occultetur*, tamen honestum fieri nullo modo potest.

Vitia mentis, *quantumvis exigua sint*, in majus excedunt.

*Licet* ex his orationibus *eligant*, quæ notatione et laude digna sint, omnes oratoris virtutes in iis reperiuntur.

*Detrahat* auctori multum fortuna *licebit*, tu tamen ingenio clara ferere meo.

*Ut desint vires*, tamen est laudanda voluntas.

NOTE 1. *Quamquam* has generally the indicative; a few instances only being found in Cicero in which it is used with the subjunctive.

NOTE 2. In later writers, Tacitus for example, *quamvis* and *quamquam* have changed their signification, and *quamquam* is used with the subjunctive, *quamvis* with the indicative.

158. *Antequam* and *priusquam* have commonly in a narrative the imperfect and pluperfect of the subjunctive: with the present, the indicative and subjunctive are equally used, as *antequam dico* and *antequam dicam*. It is to be observed that these two conjunctions, like *postquam*, occur frequently divided into the words of which they are compounded.

Hannibal omnia et in prælio apud Zamam et ante aciem, *priusquam excederet* pugna, erat expertus.

Sæpe magna indoles virtutis, *priusquam* rei publicæ prodesse *potuisset*, extinctus fuit.

Cæsar ad Pompeii castra pervenit *prius, quam* Pompeius sentire *posset*.

*Ante* videmus fulgurationem, *quam* sonum audiamus.

Membris utimur *prius, quam didicimus*, cujus ea utilitatis causa habeamus.

Omnia experiri certum est, *priusquam pereo*.

159. The particles of time, *dum*, *donec*, *quamdiu*, and *quoad*, have an indicative, when they signify *as long as*. In the sense of *until*, they may have either mood; the indicative, if nothing more is contemplated than the line of termination; the subjunctive, if there is a reference to an object to be attained.

Lacedæmoniorum gens fortis fuit, *dum* Lycurgi leges *vigebant*.

Iritis aut subtrahendi sunt ii, in quos impetum conantur facere,



*dum* se ipsi *colligant*, aut *rogandi orandique* sunt, ut, si quam habent ulciscendi vim, differant in tempus aliud, *dum defervescat ira*.

*Quoad perventum sit* eo, quo sumpta navis est, non domini est navis sed navigantium.

Cato *quoad vixit*, virtutum laude crevit.

Delibera hoc, *dum ego redeo*.

De comitiis, *donec rediit* Marcellus, silentium fuit.

NOTE. *Dum* in the sense of *during the time that*, *whilst*, has, generally, not only in connexion with the tenses of the present, but also with those of the past time, a present indicative, to denote the duration of an action, during the occurrence and change of others.

*Dum* pauca mancipia retinere *vult*, *fortunas omnes perdidit*.

*Dum expectat*, quidnam sibi certi offeratur, ante horam tertiam noctis de foro non *discessit*.

*Dum* ea Romani *parant consultantque*, jam Saguntum summa vi *oppugnabatur*.

160. The old rule respecting the use of *cum* is, that *cum temporale* takes an indicative, *cum causale*, a subjunctive. This requires some modification.

161. *Cum* is properly a relative adverb (the demonstrative of which is *tum*) and signifies *when*, in which sense it governs an indicative mood. But it is also made to refer to a train of thought, and expresses the relation of cause to effect; like the English *since*. In this sense it is construed with the subjunctive; as, *cum sciam*, *cum scirem*, *cum intellexerim*, *cum intellexissem*, since I know, since I knew, &c. &c.; — therefore I did this or that. In the sense of *although*, the clause with *cum* does not, it is true, express the reason of the former proposition, but indicates a connexion of thought, and therefore likewise takes the subjunctive; as, *homines, cum multis rebus infirmiores sint*, hac re maxime bestiis præstant, quod loqui possunt.

*Cum* solitudo et vita sine amicis insidiarum et metus plena sit, ratio ipsa monet amicitias comparare.

Dionysius *cum* in communibus suggestis consistere non *auderet*, concionari ex turri alta solebat.

De pietate Attici quid plura commemorem, *cum* hoc ipsum vere gloriantem *audierim* in funere matris suæ, quam extulit annorum nonaginta, cum esset ipse septem et sexaginta, se nunquam cum matre in gratiam rediisse.

Socratis ingenium variosque sermones immortalitati scriptis suis Plato tradidit, *cum* ipse literam Socrates nullam reliquisset.

Non intelligo, quare Rullus quemquam intercessurum putet, *cum* intercessio stultitiam intercessoris *significatura sit*.

Quæ *cum* ita *sint*, usque eo senatoria judicia perditâ profligataque esse arbitratur Verres, ut hoc palam dictitet non sine causa se cupidum pecuniæ fuisse, quoniam tantum in pecunia præsidium experitur esse.

*Cum* omnibus virtutibus me affectum esse *cupiam*, tamen nihil est, quod malim quam me et gratum esse et videri.

Ego me sæpe nova videri dicere intelligo, *cum* pervetera *dicam*.

Apollonius Alabandensis *cum* mercede *doceret*, tamen non patiebatur eos, quos judicabat non posse oratores evadere, operam apud sese perdere, dimittebatque.

Phocion fuit perpetuo pauper, *cum* divitissimus esse *posset*.

Toto prælio, *cum* ab hora septima ad vesperum *pugnatum sit*, aversum hostem videre nemo potuit.

Thus far the doctrine of the use of *cum* is simple. *Cum* when it signifies a relation of time takes the indicative; when it denotes a connexion of thought, the subjunctive.

162. A difficulty arises only from the construction of *cum* in narration, where it is joined with the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive, though it is translated in English by *when*, and seems only to express a relation of time. This is a peculiarity of the Latin language, and it is only to be observed, that this is the established manner, though the grammatical relation of the sentences would seem to admit another.

Zenonem, *cum* Athenis *essem*, audiebam frequenter.

Hæc scripsi postridie ejus diei, *cum* castra *haberem* in agro Mopsuestiæ.

*Cum* in ea parte, in qua Camillus erat, ea fortuna *esset*, aliam in partem terror ingens ingruerat.

Atticus *cum* septem et septuaginta annos *complessset*, nactus est morbum.

Thucydides libros suos tum scripsisse dicitur, *cum* a re publica *remotus* atque in exilium *pulsus esset*.

Epaminondas *cum* *vicisset* Lacedæmonios apud Mantineam, atque ipse gravi vulnere exanimari se *videret*, quæsit, salvusne *esset* clypeus.

**NOTE.** It has been attempted to explain this peculiarity of the Latin language by the fact, that, in most instances, the events, which are declared to be simultaneous or successive to each other, are considered as having to a certain degree the connexion of cause and effect. But it must be confessed that there are many instances, to which this explanation does not apply; and we are obliged to rest satisfied with the well established fact, that such is the usage of the language.

163. But *cum*, as a particle of time, except in narration, may be joined with the indicative of all the tenses, even of the imperfect and pluperfect, like *quo tempore*, or *tum cum*, which *tum* is often found with it.

Qui non defendit injuriam, neque propulsat a suis, *cum potest*, injuste facit.

Sed da operam, ut valeas, et, si valebis, *cum recte navigari poterit*, *tum naviges*.

Dabo operam, ut te videam, *cum id satis commode facere potero*.

Fuit, *cum hoc dici poterat*; patricius enim eras et a liberatoribus patriæ ortus.

Romæ haud minus terroris erat, quam fuerat biennio ante, *cum castra Punica objecta Romanis mœnibus portisque fuerant*.

O acerbam mihi memoriam temporis illius et loci, *cum hic in me incidit, cum complexus est, conspersitque lacrimis*, nec loqui præ mœrore potuit.

**NOTE.** Such propositions as the following, are convenient to show the difference between *cum* of 162 and that of 163.

At ego, *cum casu diebus iis itineris faciendi causa decedens e provincia Puteolos forte venissem, cum plurimi et lautissimi solent esse in iis locis, concidi pæne, judices, cum ex me quidam quasisset, quo die Roma exissem, et numquid in ea esset novi*.

164. Connected with this is the use of *cum*, when it denotes an action or occurrence frequently repeated.

*Cum* autem ver esse cœperat, cujus initium iste non a Favonio neque ab aliquo astro notabat, sed *cum rosam viderat, tunc incipere ver arbitrabatur, dabat se labori atque itineribus*.

Sic confecto itinere, *cum ad aliquod oppidum venerat, eadem lectica usque in cubiculum deferebatur*.

Philosophiæ præcepta ne obsolescerent, *renovabam, cum licebat, legendo*.

*Cum* tetra prodigia nuntiata sunt, decemviri libros Sibyllinos adire jubentur.

NOTE. The sense of the second proposition would be a different one, if it were expressed thus: Sic confecto itinere, *cum* ad aliquod oppidum *venisset*, eadem lectica usque in cubiculum *delatus est*. Instead of expressing an action frequently repeated, it would denote some particular instance; not *as often as he came*, but *when he had come*.

165. *Cum temporale* is used with the indicative of the perfect or imperfect of contemporary facts, where we should say *at which time*, or *while*. This meaning is made still more distinct by adding *interea* or *interim*. The perfect is used in an historical account, the imperfect in a description.

Catulus cum ex vobis quæreret, si in uno Cn. Pompeio omnia poneretis, si quid eo factum esset, in quo spem essetis habituri; cepit magnum suæ virtutis fructum ac dignitatis, *cum* omnes prope una voce in eo ipso vos spem habituros esse dixistis.

Bellum subito exarsit, quod, qui erant in Africa, ante audierunt geri quam parari. Quo audito partim cupiditate inconsiderata partim cæco quodam timore primo salutis post etiam studii sui quærebant aliquem ducem: *cum* Ligarius domum spectans et ad suos redire cupiens nullo se implicari negotio *passus est*.

Sed pretium rogationis statim socii flagitare: *cum interim* imparem Drusum ægrumque rerum temere motarum matura (ut in tali discrimine) mors *abstulit*.

Cædebat virgis in medio foro Messanæ civis Romanus, iudices, *cum interea* nullus gemitus, nulla vox alia istius miseri inter dolorem crepitumque plagarum *audiebatur* nisi hæc: civis Romanus sum.

NOTE. Instead of the imperfect, the historical infinitive is frequently used.

Ægerrime id plebs ferebat jacere tamdiu irritas sanctiones, quæ de suis commodis ferrentur: *cum interim* de sanguine et supplicio suo latam legem confestim *exerceri* et tantam vim *habere*.

Nec multum erat progressa navis, *cum* dato signo *ruere* tectum loci.

Victor tot intra paucos dies bellis Romanus promissa consulis fidemque senatus expectabat; *cum* Appius quam asperrime poterat jus de creditis pecuniis *dicere*.

166. *Cum* is used with the indicative of other tenses, especially of the present, in the animated course of the narration, when it is not the former, but rather the consequent

member of the sentence. The adverbs *jam*, *vis*, *nondum* are frequently used in the first member of the clause.

*Jamque*, qui Darium vehebant equi, confossi hastis et dolore effertati jugum quaterere et regem curru excutere *cæperant*, *cum* ille veritus, ne vivus veniret in hostium potestatem, *desilit*, et in equum, qui ad hoc sequebatur, *imponitur*.

*Jam* in conspectu sed extra teli jactum utraque acies erat, *cum* priores Persæ inconditum et trucem *sustulere* clamorem.

Evolabat *jam* e conspectu fere fugiens quadriremis, *cum* etiamtum ceteræ naves suo in loco *moliebantur*.

Non dubitabat Minucius, qui Sopatrum defendebat, quin iste, quoniam consilium dimisisset, illo die rem illam quæsiturus non esset, *cum* repente *jubetur* dicere.

*Jam* ver appetebat, *cum* Hannibal ex hibernis *movit*.

*Vix* annus intercesserat ab hoc sermone cohortationis meæ, *cum* Sulpicius *accusavit* C. Norbanum defendente me.

*Vix* explicandi ordinis spatium Etruscis fuit, *cum* pugna *jam* ad gladios, ubi Mars est atrocissimus, *venerat*.

*Nondum* centum et decem anni sunt, *cum* de pecuniis repetundis a L. Pisone *lata* lex est, nulla antea *cum* fuisset.

167. *Postquam* or *posteaquam*, *ubi*, *ut*, *ut primum*, *cum primum*, *simulac*, or *simulatque*, in the sense of *when*, *as soon as*, are usually joined with the indicative perfect, when the narrative is direct; e. g. *ubi* illud *audivit*, nuntium ad regem misit; *postquam* nihil extorquere *potuit*, in hiberna cohortes misit; Verres, *simulatque* ei provincia Sicilia sorte *obvenit*, statim quærere cœpit. The accuracy with which the Latin language usually distinguishes the times of consecutive actions, would lead to the expectation, that the pluperfect should rather be used in this case than the perfect.

Unus ex iis (captivis) domum abiit, quod fallaci reditu in castra jure jurando se exsolvisset. Quod *ubi innotuit relatumque* ad senatum est, omnes censuerunt comprehendendum et custodibus publice datis deducendum ad Hannibalem esse.

*Postquam* divitiæ honori esse *cæpere*, et eas gloria, imperium, potentia *sequebatur*, hebescere virtus, paupertas probro haberi, innocentia pro malevolentia duci cœpit.

Philodamus *posteaquam* jus suum obtinere non *potuit*, ut humanitatem consuetudinemque suam retineret, laborabat.

Inter miracula *Aegypti* fuit *Memnonis* saxea effigies, *ubi* radiis *icta est*, sonum reddens.

*Ubi* spectaculi tempus *venit*, *deditaque* eo mentes cum oculis *erant*, tum ex composito orta *vis*, signoque dato *juventus Romana* ad rapiendas *virgines* discurrit.

*Romam ut nuntiatum est* *Vejos* captos, velut ex insperato immensum gaudium fuit.

Heri non multum, *postquam* tu *discessisti*, *urbani* quidam *litteras* ad me attulerunt.

NOTE 1. It is to be observed that, according to the general principle, the imperfect is used, if the action is not yet completed, as appears from the second and fourth examples; for *dedita erant* is to be considered as the imperfect of *deditus sum*, I am engaged.

NOTE 2. *Postquam* or *posteaquam* is sometimes found with the pluperfect, but not very frequently.

*Posteaquam* tantam multitudinem *collegerat* emblematum, ut ne unum quidem cuiquam reliquisset, instituit officinam *Syracensis* in regia.

## SECTION XIII.

### *Imperative Mood.*

168. The imperative has in the active and passive two forms, of which the first has only one person, namely the second; *scribe*, *sequere*, write, follow; and in the plural *scribite*, *sequimini*; the second form has the second person and the third, which in the singular are the same; *scribito* (write thou, or let him write), *sequitor*: in the plural the persons are different; *scribitote*, *sequiminor*, write, follow; *scribunto*, *sequuntor*, let them write, follow.

169. In both forms the imperative expresses a command; but in the first also an exhortation and a wish; *parce viribus tuis! vive felix!* The second form is chiefly used for the sake of emphasis in the wording of laws.

*Magna vis est* in virtutibus; *eas excita*, si forte dormiunt.

*Justitiam cole* et pietatem.

*Dubitate* etiam nunc, iudices, si potestis, a quo sit Sex. Roscius occisus.

Regio imperio duo *sunt*, iique consules *appellantur*; militiæ summum jus *habent*, nemini *parent*, illis salus populi suprema lex *est*.

Ex legatorum sententia fœdus in hæc verba fere cum Antiocho conscriptum est: Amicitia regi Antiocho cum populo Romano his legibus *est*: *Excedito* urbibus, agris, vicis, castellis cis Taurum montem usque ad Tanaim amnem.

Fabius pictor legatus a Delphis Romam rediit, responsumque ex scripto recitavit: Pythio Apollini re publica vestra bene gesta servataque donum *mitto*, lasciviam a vobis *prohibetote*.

170. With the imperative, *not* must be rendered by *ne*, and *nor* by *neve*.

Nimum *ne crede* colori.

Hominem mortuum (inquit lex in duodecim tabulis) in urbe *ne sepelito*, *neve* urito.

Impius *ne audeto* placare donis iram deorum.

Celso medius stans aggere fatur: *Ne* qua meis *est* dictis mora; *neve* quis ob inceptum subitum mihi *segnior ito*.

NOTE 1. Concerning the use of the present subjunctive for the imperative, see § 12, 131.

NOTE 2. Instead of the imperative, some circumlocutions are quite common; for the positive imperative *fac* and *cura* with the present of the subjunctive, as, *fac cogites*, *fac animo forti magnoque sis*, *fac filium tuum omnibus artibus erudias*; this is somewhat more emphatic than the mere imperative. If a prohibition is intended, *noli* may be used with the infinitive; as *noli putare*, *nolite existimare*; and *cave* or *fac* with *ne* or the subjunctive alone, as *cave hoc facias*; *cave, ne suspicionem des fide reconciliata gratia*.

Magnum *fac* animum *habeas* et spem bonam.

*Cura, ut* quam primum *venias*.

*Fac, ne* quid aliud *cures*, nisi ut quam commodissime convalescas.

*Cave, si* me amas, *existimes* me, quod jocosius scribam, abjecisse curam rei publicæ.

*Noli* te *oblivisci* Ciceronem esse et eum, qui aliis consueris præcipere et dare consilium.

*Nolite* ad vestras leges atque instituta *exigere ea*, quæ Lacedæmone fiunt.

*Nolite* id *velle*, quod fieri non potest.

NOTE 3. *Velim* and *velim*, *ut* is a milder form of commanding.

Me tibi amicissimum et fuisse semper *existimes velim*, et futurum esse confidas.

NOTE 4. The *future* is sometimes used with the force of an imperative.

*Valebis*, meaue negotia *videbis*, meque diis iuvantibus ante brumam *expectabis*.

Hæc tibi *erunt* curæ, quemadmodum ostendis, meque totum et mea et meos commendatos *habebis*.

Ubi sententiam meam vobis peregero, tum quibus eadem placebunt, in dextram partem taciti *transibitis*.

Tu nihil invita *dicas faciesve* Minerva.

## SECTION XIV.

### *Infinitive Mood.*

171. The infinitive expresses a condition or an action, as in progress or completed, but without specification of person, number, or time; e. g. *scribere* expresses the action as in progress; *scripsisse*, as completed. The verb on which the infinitive depends, determines the time in which the action falls.

NOTE 1. The names *Infinitive of the action continuing*, and *infinitive of the action completed* (*Infinitivus rei infectæ* and *Infinitivus rei perfectæ*) would be more correct than those of *present* and *perfect infinitive*; since *scribere* does not imply present time; for *volam*, *volebam*, or *volueram scribere* can be said with as much propriety as *volo scribere*. In comparing the two infinitives with the tenses of the verb, it was natural to refer *scribere* to *scribo*, and *scripsisse* to *scripsi*, though in respect to the state of the action, *scribere* belongs equally to *scribebam*, and *scripsisse* to *scripseram*. The first is therefore sometimes called *present* and *imperfect infinitive*, the second *perfect* and *pluperfect infinitive*; but this does not comprehend the whole of their signification.

NOTE 2. *Memini* takes generally an infinitive present, although an action already completed is spoken of; as, *memini* Catonem mecum et cum Scipione *disserere*, I remember Cato's talking with me. This must, however, still be considered as an infinitive of the action con-



tinuing (infinitivus rei infectæ), and designed to transfer the reader to the very time of the conversation, by representing it as in progress. Where the result is to be stated, the perfect infinitive is used along with *memini*; as, *meministis me ita distribuisse initio causam*; he wished the judges to remember how he *had* arranged, not how he *was then arranging* his subject. But it must be observed, that usage gives the preference to the former mode of expression.

*Memini te mihi Phamæ cœnam narrare.*

*Ego virginem forma bona memini videre.*

Peto igitur, ut *memineris* te omnia, quæ tua fides pateretur, mihi cumulate *recepisse*.

Philippus rex iratus erat Ætolis, quod solos *obtrectasse* gloriæ suæ, cum liberaret Græciam, *meminerat*.

NOTE 3. The infinitive perfect is used after some phrases, where we might expect the infinitive present; *pudet, contentus sum, satis est, satis habeo*.

*Hæc breviter demonstrasse contentus.*

*Contenti simus id unum dixisse.*

*Non puduit eum hoc fecisse.*

172. There are also in the passive two infinitives, one called the infinitive present, for a state of suffering still continuing; the other, the infinitive perfect, for the same state completed. The former is simply formed; e. g. *laudari*; the latter by a circumlocution with the participle and *esse*, *laudatus esse*, or, *laudatum esse*, the participle taking the gender and number of the noun to which it refers.

NOTE. As *esse*, in this form of the infinitive, loses its own signification of a continued state, the infinitive present of some other verb is used, when this state is to be expressed; as, *scio urbem obsessam teneri*; for *scio urbem obsessam esse* would not express the continuance but termination of this state, I know that the city *has been* besieged. Where, however, no ambiguity can arise, the perfect participle with *esse* is sometimes used to denote the continuance of the state. *Fuisse* with the perfect participle expresses distinctly the completion of the state previous to a certain past action; as, *scio urbem expugnatam fuisse, cum rex in castra venit*.

Tradidere quidam Macroni *præscriptum fuisse*, si arma ab Seiano moverentur, juvenem ducem populo imponere.

173. There is also in the active and passive voices an infinitive of future time, denoting the action or the state of suffering as continuing; in the active formed by means of

*esse* and the participle of the future, *laudaturum esse*, to be about to praise; in the passive, by the supine with *iri*, *laudatum iri*, to be about to be praised. The active varies, according to the number and gender of the noun referred to; the passive is unchangeable.

NOTE 1. The participle of the future properly denotes the intention or desire of the performance of an action, and in this signification is connected with *esse* and *fuisse*; as, *scio te scripturum fuisse*, I know that you *desired to write*; whence it was an easy transition to the sense, that you *would have written*, in conditional sentences, when the condition is not fulfilled.

*Etiamsi obtemperasset auspiciis, idem eventurum fuisse puto.*

NOTE 2. What is called the future participle in the passive voice, cannot be used with *esse* to denote simple futurity; for the proper meaning of the participle in *dus* is, what ought to be done; *laudandum esse* is therefore equivalent to, *necesse esse, ut laudetur*, not to *fore, ut laudetur*.

174. Besides this, a circumlocution may be employed for the infinitive of future time, by means of *futurum esse* (or the unchangeable *fore*), *ut* followed by a present or imperfect subjunctive for a continuing state, and by a perfect or pluperfect for the perfect state in futurity. As to the choice of the one or other of the two kinds of tenses, it depends on the tense of the governing verb; as, *credo fore, ut epistolam scribas*, and *credebam fore, ut epistolam scriberes*. So too *credo fore, ut epistolam scripseris*, and *credebam fore, ut epistolam scripsisses*. In the passive *credo fore, ut epistola scribatur*; *credebam fore, ut epistola scriberetur*. For the perfect future in the passive the participle perfect *scriptus* may be used, which in the active is wanting; therefore *credo* and *credebam epistolam scriptam fore*. This circumlocution for the future infinitive is indispensable where the verb has no supine, and no participle future active, as is the case with many intransitives. Thus it is only in this way that we can express *spero futurum esse (fore), ut te hujus rei pœniteat: puto fore, ut brevi omnibus his incommodis medeare*.

*Video te velle in cœlum migrare, et spero fore, ut contingat id nobis.*

*Non eram nescius fore, ut hic noster labor in varios reprehensiones incurreret.*

Ptolemæus mathematicus Othoni persuaserat *fore, ut* in imperium *addisceretur*.

Pompeius dixerat, priusquam concurrerent acies, *fore, uti* exercitus Cæsaris pelleretur.

NOTE 1. The circumlocution *futurum fuisse, ut* with the imperfect subjunctive passive corresponds to the infinitive *fuisse* with the future participle active in a conditional proposition (see 173, note 1).

Rex ignorabat *futurum fuisse, ut* oppidum ipsi *dederetur*, si unum diem expectasset.

Nisi eo ipso tempore nuntii de Cæsaris victoria essent allati, existimabant plerique *futurum fuisse, ut* oppidum *amitteretur*.

Theophrastus moriens accusasse naturam dicitur, quod hominibus tam exiguam vitam dedisset; quorum si ætas potuisset esse longinquior, *futurum fuisse, ut* omnibus perfectis artibus omni doctrina hominum vita *erudiretur*.

NOTE 2. *Fore* is found in two passages pleonastically joined with the future participle active; Cic. ep. ad Attic. 5: *deinde addis, si quid secus, te ad me fore venturum*; and Liv. 6, 42: *dignam eam rem senatus censuit esse meritoque id, si quando unquam alias, deum immortalium causa libenter facturos fore, ut ludi maximi fierent, et dies unus ad triduum adjiceretur*. In both instances the future infinitive, *venturum esse* and *facturos esse*, would have been sufficient. But joined to the future participle passive, *fore* is not pleonastical, if a future and not an actual necessity is spoken of; as Liv. 37, 39: *instare hiemem, aut sub pellibus habendos milites fore, aut differendum esse* in æstatem bellum.

175. The infinitive may be regarded as a substantive of the neuter gender, with two cases, nominative and accusative, differing in this respect from other substantives, that it governs a case, and also expresses the complete or incomplete state of the action. The infinitive must be considered as the nominative, when it is the subject of a proposition; as *invidere non cadit in sapientem*; *laudari jucundum est*; *virtus est vitium fugere*; it must be considered as the accusative, when it is the object of a verb transitive; e. g. *volo, cupio, audeo, conor hoc facere, dicere, scribere* (the construction being the same as, *cupio hanc rem*); *nescio mentiri*; *didici vera dicere*.

Me, cum huc veni, *hoc ipsum nihil agere* et plane *cessare* delectat.

Docto homini et erudito *vivere est cogitare*.

Antonius nihil Mucianum veritus est; quod exitiosius erat quam Vespasianum *sprevisse*.

*Vincere scit Hannibal, victoria ubi nescit.*

*Ferre laborem consuetudo docet.*

*Multum interest inter dare et accipere.*

*Oderunt peccare boni virtutis amore.*

NOTE 1. That the infinitive is a sort of *nomen verbale*, appears from the addition of *ipsum*. Other adjective pronouns are very rarely joined to it; as, *meum intelligere nulla pecunia vendo*.

NOTE 2. The infinitive is used only as a *nominative* and *accusative*. Most of the instances of the infinitive being used as a genitive, dative, or ablative, may be explained as imitations of the Greek idiom.

*Iniit consilia reges Lacedæmoniorum tollere.*

*Cupido incesserat non interiora modo Ægypti sed etiam Æthiopiam invisere.*

*Non in eam turpitudinem venisses, ut tibi esset confitendum te consilium cepisse hominis propinqui fortunas funditus evertere.* (The only instance in Cicero).

*Vos servire magis quam imperare parati estis.*

176. When the infinitive has its own subject joined to it, it is put in the accusative.

NOTE. It is to be noticed, that the infinitive present in the historic style stands for the present or imperfect indicative (hence called *Infinitivus historicus*), and then it has its subject in the nominative.

*Postulo, Carpinatius mihi respondeat, qui sit iste Verrutius; in Sicilia sit, an jam decesserit. Clamare omnes neminem unquam in Sicilia fuisse Verrutum. Ego instare, ut mihi responderet, quis esset, ubi esset, unde esset.*

177. This is the construction of the *accusative with the infinitive*, which, like the infinitive alone, may be used in two ways; as the subject, and as the object of a proposition. The accusative with the infinitive is the subject, wherever, if a noun could be substituted for the infinitive, it would be in the nominative case: so it is when the predicate is *est, erat*, with a noun; an adjective, such as *justum est, æquum, verum, verisimile, consentaneum, apertum est, opus est, necesse est*; or an impersonal verb, as *apparet, constat, oportet*; or the third person singular of the passive, *intelligitur, perspicitur, &c.*

*Victorem parcere victis æquum est.*

*Ad salutem civium inventas esse leges constat.*

*Legem brevem esse oportet, quo facilius ab imperitis teneatur.*

*Magnis in laudibus tota fere fuit Græcia victorem Olympiæ citari.*

*Naves Antiatium incensæ sunt, rostrisque earum suggestum in foro exstructum adornari placuit.*

*Omnibus bonis expedit salvam esse rem publicam.*

*Aliud est iracundum esse, aliud iratum.*

*Facinus est, vinciri civem Romanum; scelus verberari; prope parricidium necari.*

*Signo sublato ex prætoria nave dispersam classem in unum colligi mos erat.*

*Contentum suis rebus esse maximæ sunt certissimæque divitiæ.*

NOTE 1. It is therefore inaccurate to say, that this accusative with the infinitive is governed by *verum est, constat, &c.*; the infinitive is here the nominative, and instead of it we might say, *æqua est victoris humanitas, legum brevis necessaria est*, in the examples just given.

NOTE 2. When the infinitive *esse* with an adjective, or another infinitive with an adjective part of speech, is joined with *licet*, as *otiosum, felicem esse*, the adjective may, agreeably to the rule, be in the accusative, or, which is more common, be attracted to the dative of the noun governed by *licet*, and stand in the dative.

*Civi Romano licet esse Gaditanum sive exilio, sive postliminio, sive rejectione hujus civitatis.*

*Hæc præcepta servantem licet magnifice graviter animoseque vivere.*

*Licuit esse otioso Themistocli, licuit Epaminondæ.*

*Roscius rogat oratque, ut sibi liceat innocenti amicorum opibus vitam in egestate degere.*

NOTE 3. This construction is by poets and later writers transferred to other verbs, as, *necesse est, datur, contingit, prodest*, etc.

*Vobis necesse est fortibus viris esse.*

*Vobis immunibus hujus esse mali dabitur.*

*Quo tibi, Tulli, sumere depositum clavum fierique tribuno?*

*Nescio, an satius fuerit populo Romano Sicilia et Africa contento fuisse.*

178. The accusative with the infinitive is the object, after verbs denoting *seeing, hearing, knowing, feeling, thinking, saying* (*verba sentiendi et declarandi*) &c. To these belong the verbs, *audio, video, sentio, animadverto, cognosco, intelligo, percipio, disco, scio, opinor, suspicor, credo, cogito, censeo, existimo, duco, statuo, memini, recordor, obliviscor, — dico, scribo, perhibeo, refero, nuntio, confirmo, nego, osten-*

*do, demonstro, promitto, polliceor, spondeo, voveo*, and several others. After these and similar verbs, instead of the finite verb of the dependent proposition with the conjunction *that*, the infinitive is used, and the subject of this dependent proposition is put in the accusative.

*Ego ne utilem quidem nobis arbitror esse futurarum rerum scientiam.*

*Sentit animus se sua vi non aliena moveri.*

*Vulvres videmus procreationis atque utilitatis suæ causa fingere et construere nidos.*

*Pompeios, celebrem Campaniæ urbem, desedisse terræ motu audivimus.*

*Suscipe paullisper meas partes, et eum te esse finge, qui sum ego.*

*Plerique amicos eos potissimum diligunt, ex quibus sperant se maximum fructum esse capturos.*

*Habitari ait Xenophanes in luna eamque esse terram multarum urbium et montium.*

*Magnum esse solem philosophus probabit; quantus sit, mathematicus.*

*Britanni ad Cæsarem legatos miserunt; obsides daturus, quæque imperasset, sese facturos polliciti sunt.*

*Orpheum poetam docet Aristoteles nunquam fuisse.*

NOTE 1. It is to be observed that in the *oratio obliqua*, when the thoughts or speech of another are reported, but not in his own words, interrogative clauses, differing in appearance only from the affirmative part of the proposition, are expressed by the accusative with the infinitive, although the general rule would require the subjunctive. Instances of this kind are particularly frequent in historians.

*Hoc pater me stulte fecisse dixit; quid enim interesse discriminis, utrum pecuniam abjecissem, an homini improbo dedissem; (for interrogavit enim, quid interesset discriminis, etc).*

*Fingerent mentitum ante atque ideo non habuisse, quod tum responderet; cui servo unquam mendacii pœnam vincula fuisse?*

*Quodsi veteris contumeliæ oblivisci vellet, num etiam recentium injuriarum memoriam deponere posse?*

NOTE 2. Clauses introduced by relative pronouns and relative adverbs into an *oratio obliqua*, are frequently put in the accusative with the infinitive, which as intermediate clauses ought to be in the subjunctive, when they are coördinate and not subordinate to the accusative with the infinitive, and may be explained by *et* and the demonstrative.

*Res ad eum defertur: esse civem Romanum, qui se Syracusis in lautumiis fuisse quereretur; quem jam ingredientem navem et Verri nimis atrociter minitantem a se retractum esse et asservatum, ut ipse in eum statueret, quod videretur; (for et eum retractum esse).*

Nam illorum urbem (Athenas) ut propugnaculum oppositum esse barbaris, apud quam jam bis classes regias fecisse naufragium; (et apud eam).

Unumquemque nostrum censent philosophi mundi esse partem, ex quo illud natura sequi, ut communem utilitatem nostræ anteponamus; (et ex eo sequi).

Iri in castra placuit; honorificum id militibus fore, quorum favorem ut largitione et ambitu male *adquiri*, ita per bonas artes haud *spernendum*; (nam eorum favorem male *adquiri*).

NOTE 3. Explanatory and qualifying clauses in an oratio obliqua, commencing with *nam, enim, quippe, videlicet, sed, verum, autem, quidem, quamquam, cum interim*, etc., are often put in the accusative with the infinitive.

*Quamquam nullam nobilitatem, nullos honores, nulla merita cuiquam ad dominationem pandere viam: sed tamen Claudios, Cassios consularibus, decemviratibus, suis majorumque honoribus, splendore familiarum sustulisse animos, quo nefas fuerit.*

Ideo *se* mœnibus inclusos *tenere* eos, *quia*, si qui evasissent aliqua, velut *feras bestias* per agros *vagari* et *laniare* et *trucidare*, quodcunque obviam detur.

*Fugere senatum* testes, tabulas publicas, census cujusque, *quia* nolint conspici summam æris alieni, quæ indicatura sit demersam partem a parte civitatis, *cum interim obæratam plebem objectari* aliis atque aliis hostibus.

NOTE 4. It is chiefly to be remarked, that the *personal pronouns*, which are never added to the finite verb but for the sake of emphasis, are always expressed with the infinitive. The young student must heed the use of the reflective pronoun *se*, which is used, when, in the dependent clause, a reference is made to the subject of the leading member; and also in the annexed clauses, when anything is mentioned as the sentiment or language of the subject, the pronominal references are made by the reflective pronoun and its possessive *suus*. See § 9, 90, note 1, and § 9, 91. Thus we should say, Cæsar *se* non *sui* commodi causa arma cepisse dicebat; but we should not always express an additional or intermediate clause by these pronouns; as, Cæsar, cum *eum* nonnulli injustitiæ accusarent, or, Cæsar, quod *ejus* causa a plerisque damnabatur, *se* non *sui* commodi causa armacepisse dicebat; but when the intermediate clause is spoken of as his sentiment, then *se* and *suus* must be used; as, Cæsar, quod *suum* jus a senatu læsum esset, or postquam nihil *sibi* ac  *suis* postulatis tributum esset, *se* non *sui* sed ipsius rei publicæ causa arma cepisse dicebat.

Allebrogas Cæsari demonstrant *sibi* præter agri solum nihil esse reliquum.

Solon, quo et tutior vita *ejus* esset, et plus aliquanto rei publicæ prodesset, furere *se* simulavit.

Jam inde ab initio Faustulo spes fuerat regiam stirpem apud *se* educari.

Eleus Hippias, cum Corinthum venisset, gloriatus est annulum, quem haberet, pallium, quo amictus, soccos, quibus indutus esset, *se sua* manu confecisse.

NOTE 5. This rule of expressing the personal pronoun (in the accusative) before the infinitive must be particularly observed with verbs of *promising* and *hoping*, which in English are joined with the infinitive alone, but in Latin are with greater exactness not only joined with the accusative of the pronouns, but also the future tense of the infinitive; as, he promised to come, give, *promisit se venturum, daturum esse*; *spero hoc me assecuturum* (with the omission of *esse*, which happens often with this infinitive and the infinitive perfect passive).

NOTE 6. There are indeed some instances of the omission of the pronoun, the accusative of the subject, as well as of the use of the present infinitive after verbs of hoping and promising; but they are undoubtedly to be considered as exceptions; and with regard to the omission of the pronoun, it is to be observed that, in most instances, there is, in the sentence itself, some extenuating circumstance.

Bibulus eodem igne nautas dominosque navium interfecit magnitudine pœnæ reliquos *detertere sperans*.

Quod imperarentur, *facere dixerunt*.

Qui pollicebantur obsides *dare*.

Sed me, judices, non minus Sulpicii conquestio quam Catonis accusatio commovebat, qui gravissime et acerbissime *ferre dixit*.

Doluisse se, quod populi Romani beneficium sibi per contumeliam extorqueretur; tamen hanc jacturam honoris sui rei publicæ causa æquo animo *tulisse*; cum literas ad senatum miserit, ut omnes ab exercitibus discederent, ne id quidem *impetravisse*.

NOTE 7. When the use of an infinitive active would bring two accusatives together, one of the subject and the other of the object, and an ambiguity would be likely to arise, it is a rule to adopt a passive construction, by which the accusative of the object becomes the subject, and the other is avoided by the preposition *ab* or *per*.

At vèro ne fando quidem auditum est *crocodilum* aut *ibim* aut *felem violatum ab Ægyptiis*.

Ita victoria justa imperator appellatus apud Issum, quo in loco sæpe, ut ex te audiui, Clitarchus tibi narravit *Darium ab Alexandro esse superatum*, adduxi exercitum ad infestissimam Ciliciæ partem.

Aio te, *Æacida, Romanos vincere posse*.



179. As the accusative with the infinitive is used, after the *verbs* enumerated above (178), being considered as the object governed by those verbs, so it is likewise used after *nouns* and *adjectives* of a similar meaning.

Etsi enim mihi sum *consciūs* nunquam *me* nimis vitæ cupidum *fuisse*, tamen interdum objiciebatur animo metus quidam et dolor.

Quos nominatim depoposcerat, ipsi se ituros professi sunt; *fide* accepta ab legatis *vim abfuturam*, donec causam dixissent, ierunt alii etiam illustres viri.

At *fides* mi apud hunc est nil *me* istius *facturum*.

Magna nobis pueris *opiniō* fuit *L. Crassum* non plus *attigisse* doctrinæ, quam quantum prima illa puerili institutione potuisset.

180. The accusative with the infinitive, or the infinitive alone, is used in apposition to nouns, demonstrative pronouns, and adjectives.

Revertor ad *illud*, quod mihi in hac omni est oratione propositum, omnibus malis illo anno scelere consulum *rem publicam esse confectam*.

Ad *id*, quod instituisti, oratorum genera *distinguere* ætatibus, istam diligentiam esse accommodatam puto.

*Hæc benignitas* etiam rei publicæ est utilis, *redimi* e servitute *captos*, *locupletari* tenuiores.

181. With the infinitive *esse*, and those verbs, which in the passive have two nominatives of the subject and the predicate, *videri*, *feri*, *judicari*, and the others mentioned § 3, 20, the noun of the predicate is in the accusative, when the indefinite or general subject is not expressed; thus, the phrase, it is the greatest wealth for a man to be content with his own, would be, *maximæ sunt divitiæ contentum* suis rebus *esse*.

Atticus maximum existimavit quæstum *memorem gratumque cognosci*.

Convenit tum in dando *munificum esse* tum in exigendo non *acerbum*.

*Esse* sat est *servum*, jam nolo vicarius esse.

Concessa pudet ire via *civemque videri*.

Ipse valeo, si valere est *anxium vivere*.

182. After the verbs signifying, *I am accustomed, dare, can, ought*, the infinitive follows as in English; and the predicate with *esse, judicari, videri, &c.* is put in the nominative; as, *solet tristis videri, aude sapiens esse, debes esse diligens*. But with verbs of *wishing* and *desiring* a double construction is admissible; an infinitive with the nominative, when the subject remains the same; as, *volo eruditus fieri*: but when the subject is changed, a pronoun in the accusative, answering to the new subject, must be inserted; *volo te eruditum fieri*. Even where the subject remains the same, it is sometimes repeated by the personal pronoun, which in that case must also be in the accusative; *volo me eruditum fieri*; *discipulum me haberi volo, non doctorem*; *principem se esse maluit quam videri*.

*Volo et esse et haberi gratus.*

*Noli nimium populi reverentia fretus esse.*

*Vos liberi esse non curatis?*

*Quis Pompeio scientior unquam aut fuit aut esse debuit?*

*Judicem me esse non doctorem volo.*

Omnis homines, qui sese student præstare ceteris animalibus, summa ope niti decet, ne vitam silentio transeant.

*Cupio me esse clementem*; cupio in tantis rei publicæ periculis *me non dissolutum videri*.

NOTE 1. The infinitive passive with *velle* is particularly to be noticed; as, *me amari volo*; *hoc velim intelligi*. The infinitive perfect passive is often used to denote the eager desire that something should be instantly accomplished.

Legati quod erant appellati superbius, Corinthum patres vestri, totius Græciæ lumen, *extinctam esse voluerunt*.

Saluti civis calamitosi *consultum esse volumus*.

Hoc natura præscribit, ut homo homini *consultum velit*.

NOTE 2. After the verbs denoting to *wish, endeavor, and determine*, *ut* with the subjunctive may be used, because they imply an intention and object. This construction is used seldom, and chiefly for the sake of emphasis, after the verbs of *wishing*; but often after those of *endeavoring* and *determining* (*studeo, statuo, constituo, tento, and paro*), if a new subject is introduced; if, however, there be but *one* subject, then the infinitive is commonly used.

Centuripinorum senatus *decrevit*, populusque jussit, *ut* statuas Veris quæstores demoliendas *locarent*.

*Athenienses statuerunt, ut urbe relicta naves conscenderent.*

*Phaëton optavit, ut in currum patris tolleretur.*

183. The accusative with the infinitive stands apparently unconnected, but is to be explained by an ellipsis of *credibile est*, in interrogations or exclamations expressive of indignation, the enclitic *ne* being usually added.

*Mene incepto desistere victam, nec posse Italia Teucrorum avertere regem?*

*Adeone esse hominem infelicem quemquam, ut ego sum?*

*Tene, cum ceteri socii tui fugerent ac se occultarent, tibi potissimum istas partes depoposcisse, ut in judicio versarere et sederes cum accusatore?*

*Illam clementiam mansuetudinemque nostri imperii in tantam crudelitatem inhumanitatemque esse conversam!*

NOTE. *Ut* with the subjunctive is used in the same sense.

*Victamne ut quisquam victrici patriæ præferret?*

184. There are many verbs in Latin, which seem to require an accusative with the infinitive as their immediate object, but which nevertheless are followed by the subjunctive with *ut*. It will be found, however, that most of these verbs are of such a nature, that the relation of *design* and *purpose*, or *effect* and *consequence*, which *ut* expresses, may be considered as existing between the leading verb and the dependent proposition.

185. *Ut* is used with verbs of *endeavoring*, *aiming*, *accomplishing*; *facere*, *efficere*, *perficere*, *studere*, *id* (*hoc*, *illud*) *agere*, *operam dare*, *meditari*, *curare*, *in animum inducere*, *consilium capere*, *niti*, *contendere*, *videre* (take care), *nihil antiquius habere quam*. Some of these are also joined with an infinitive (see 182); but *ut* alone must be used, when the sense points to some future period, in which an effect is to be produced.

*Omne animal se ipsum diligit, ac simul ut ortum est, id agit, ut se conservet.*

*Videndum est igitur, ut ea liberalitate utamur, quæ prosit amicis, noceat nemini.*

*Opera danda est, ut verbis utamur quam usitatissimis et quam maxime aptis, id est rem declarantibus.*

Ante senectutem *curavi*, *ut* bene *viverem*; in senectute, *ut* bene *moriar*.

Id *studuisti*, isti formæ *ut* mores consimiles *forent*.

Si omnia *fecit*, *ut sanaret*, peregit medicus partes suas.

NOTE 1. Besides the sense of *effecting*, *facio* is used with *ut* and a subjunctive, as a periphrasis for a verb of action.

Invitus quidem *feci*, *ut* L. Flaminium e senatu *ejicerem*; (for *invitus quidem ejeci*).

Invitus *facio*, *ut recorder* ruinas rei publicæ.

Glabrionem, id quod sapientissime *fecit*, *facere* lætatus sum, *ut* repente testem *dimitteret*; (for lætatus sum, *quod dimisit*).

Negavi *me esse facturum*, *ut* de periculo publico non ad consilium publicum rem integram *deferrem*; (for negavi *me* rem integram *non delaturum esse*).

NOTE 2. *Facere*, used of writers, in the sense of *introducing*, *representing*, is joined with a participle, but if the verb be in the passive, with the accusative with the infinitive.

Xenophon *facit* in iis, quæ a Socrate dicta retulit, *Socratem disputantem* formam dei quæri non oportere.

Quibus enim oculis *animæ* intueri potuit vester Plato fabricam illam tanti operis, qua *construi* a deo atque *ædificari* *qundum facit*.

186. After the verbs of *begging*, *demanding*, *admonishing*, and *commanding*, (including those of *advising*, *urging*, *encouraging*, *entrusting with a commission*, and others of a similar meaning), *ut* with the subjunctive is used, where not merely the object, but also the purpose of the request or exhortation is contemplated.

Illud te *oro* et *hortor*, *ut* in extrema parte muneris tui diligentissimus *sis*.

Themistocles *persuasit* populo, *ut* pecunia publica, quæ ex metallis rediret, classis navium *ædificaretur*.

*Impellimur* natura, *ut* prodesse *velimus* quam plurimis, imprimis docendo.

Te illud *admoneo*, *ut* quotidie *meditare* resistendum esse iracundiæ.

Alcibiades se afflictabat, lacrimansque Socrati *supplex erat*, *ut* sibi virtutem *traderet*, turpitudinemque *depelleret*.

Tribuni plebis *postulant*, *ut* sacrosancti *habeantur*.

Themistocles collegis suis *prædixit, ut ne prius Lacedæmoniorum legatos dimitterent*, quam ipse esset remissus.

NOTE 1. Among the verbs now enumerated, there are some which take the accusative with the infinitive, when what is said is considered as the object of the verb; and *ut* with the subjunctive, when there is reference to a future time, at which anything is to take place. So *moneo*, *admoneo*, in the sense of apprise, remind, or inform, take an infinitive; as *moneo te hoc falsum esse*; *persuasit mihi hoc verum esse* (he convinced me that it was true), but in the sense of *succeed in exhorting*, the subjunctive; *quis tibi persuasit, ut hoc faceres?* *Nuntio, scribo*, and even *dico*, are also used with the subjunctive, when they imply an injunction or intention that anything should be done.

*Cum vita sine amicis insidiarum et metus plena sit, ratio ipsa monet amicitias comparare.*

Cæsar Dolabellæ *dixit, ut ad me scriberet, ut in Italiam quam primum venirem.*

Deliberantibus Atheniensibus Pythia *respondit, ut mœnibus ligneis se munirent.*

*Persuasit mihi se præfecturum esse.*

*Persuasit mihi, ut proficiscerer.*

Dicæarchus vult *efficere animos esse mortales.*

Mihi ante oculos obversatur rei publicæ dignitas, quæ me ad sese rapit, hæc minora *relinquere hortatur.*

Plato autem tantum apud Dionysium auctoritate potuit valuitque eloquentia, ut ei *persuaserit tyrannidis facere finem libertatemque redde* Syracusanis.

NOTE 2. The verbs of commanding, *imperare, mandare, præscribere, edicere* (where it means to make proclamation of something to be done), *legem dare, decernere* (to decree that something be done), take *ut* with the subjunctive, agreeably to the above rule. *Jubeo* and *veto* are exceptions, and take an accusative with the infinitive.

Aristoteles *verum in oratione velat esse, numerum jubet.*

*Jubet nos Pythius Apollo noscere nosmet ipsos.*

Alexander *corpus suum in Hammonis templo condi jubet.*

Augustus *carmina Virgilio cremari contra testamenti ejus verecundiam vetuit.*

NOTE 3. Instances of *ut* with the subjunctive after *jubeo* occur, but not frequently.

*Hoc tibi in mentem non venit jubere, ut hæc quoque referret!*

*Jussit, ut quæ ex sua classe venissent naves, Eubœam peterent.*

187. Cases are, therefore, not uncommon, in the narrative style, where there first occurs a proposition with *ut* or *ne* and the subjunctive, depending on a verb of *asking, commanding, exhorting, &c.*, and then the construction of the accusative with the infinitive is introduced, containing the sentiment or words of the subject of the narration. It may be explained by supposing that the meaning to think or to say lies in the preceding verb; as *Cæsar exercitui imperavit, ne injussu suo concurreret*; *se, cum id fieri vellet, vexillo signum daturum*, i. e. he said that he would give, &c.

His consulentibus nominatim Pythia *præcepit, ut* Miltiadem sibi imperatorem *sumerent*; id si fecissent, *incepta prospera futura*.

*Monebant etiam, ne orientem morem pellendi reges inultum sineret*; satis *libertatem ipsam habere dulcedinis*. Nisi quanta vi civitates eam expetant, tanta regna reges defendant, *æquari summu infimis*. *Nihil excelsum*; *nihil, quod supra ceteros emineat, in civitatibus fore*; *adesse finem regnis, rei inter deos hominesque ælcherrimæ*.

188. *Ut* with the subjunctive must further be used, after expressions of happening, *fit, fieri non potest, accidit* (chiefly of disagreeable things), *incidit, occurrit, contingit* (chiefly of desirable things), *evenit, usu venit, occurrit*; and after the expressions, it remains, it follows; *sequitur, futurum est, extremum est, reliquum est, relinquitur, restat, superest*, and sometimes *accedit*.

*Fieri potest, ut recte quis sentiat, et id, quod sentit, polite eloqui non possit*.

*Persæpe evenit, ut utilitas cum honestate certet*.

*Reliquum est, ut egomet mihi consulam*.

NOTE 1. *Sequitur*, in the sense of *thence it follows*, should, according to its import, be followed by an accusative with the infinitive, but it has frequently *ut*, in this sense, as well as in that of *the next thing is*.

*Si hoc verum non est, sequitur, ut falsum sit*.

NOTE 2. *Efficitur*, in the same sense of *thence it follows*, has sometimes *ut*, but more frequently the accusative with the infinitive.

*Efficiturque id, quod Pythagoras vult in amicitia, ut unus fiat ex pluribus*.

*Ex quo efficitur hominem homini nocere non posse.*

*Similiter effici potest sapientem esse mundum.*

NOTE 3. After *mos* or *moris est*, *ut* may follow, instead of the infinitive alone.

*Sed est mos hominum, ut nolint eundem pluribus rebus excellere.*

NOTE 4. *Ut* is found occasionally after *æquum*, *rectum*, *verum*, *utile*, *verisimile est*, but this can be considered only as an exception, for the accusative with the infinitive, as subject of the proposition, is far more common.

*Si verum est, quod nemo dubitat, ut populus Romanus omnes gentes virtute superarit, non est infutandum Hannibalem tanto præstitisse ceteros imperatores prudentia, quanto populus Romanus antecedebat fortitudine cunctas nationes.*

*Verisimile non est ut Heius religioni suæ monumentisque majorum pecuniam anteponeret.*

*Metiri se quemque suo modulo ac pede verum est.*

*Non est rectum minori purere majorem.*

NOTE 5. There are but two passages in Cicero in which *integrum est* is followed by *ut*.

*Atque si ne integrum quidem erat; ut ad justitiam remigraret, civibus libertatem et jura redderet.*

*Neque est integrum, ut meum laborem hominum periculis sublevandis non impertiam.*

189. In all other cases in which *that* expresses a purpose, and is equivalent to *in order that*, or where it is equivalent to *so that*, *ut* must be used. See § 12, 133.

190. After the verbs which denote *willingness*, *unwillingness*, or *permission* (*volo*, *nolo*, *malo*, *permitto*, *patior*, *sino*, *licet*), which commonly take the accusative with the infinitive, (see 182, N. 2), and after verbs of *asking*, *advising*, *reminding* (*rogo*, *oro*, *precor*, *moneo*, *admoneo*, *commoneo*, *suadeo*), the subjunctive alone is often used without *ut* (see 186); most frequently of all, after *fac*, *velim*, *nolim*, *malim*, and *licet*.

*Volo prius habeat orator rem, de qua dicat, quam cogitet, quibus verbis quidque dicat aut quomodo.*

*Malo te sapiens hostis metuat, quam stulti cives laudent.*

*Velim fieri posset, ut a me sine contumelia nominarentur ii, qui se decemviros sperant futuros.*

*Gracchus permisit in publico epularentur milites.*

*Hanc si qui partem putavit orationis, sequatur Hermagoram licebit.*

*Cæsar legatos monuit ad nutum et ad tempus omnes res ab iis administrarentur.*

*Dolabellæ quod scripsi, suadeo videas, tamquam si tua res agatur.*

*Postulo, Appi, etiam atque etiam consideres, quo progrediare.*

*Tu velim animo sapienti fortique sis.*

*Magnum fac animum habeas et spem bonam.*

NOTE. With *oportet* and *necesse est* the accusative, with the infinitive or the subjunctive alone may be used. Thus *legem brevem esse oportet* or *lex oportet brevis sit*; further, *virtus necesse est vitium aspernetur* atque *oderit*, virtue must reject and hate vice. With *opus est*, the infinitive is usually joined; *ut* with the subjunctive seldom.

*Virtus voluptatis aditus intercludat necesse est.*

*In omni vita sua quemquam a recta conscientia transversum unguem non oportet discedere.*

*Suis te oportet illecebris ipsa virtus trahat ad verum decus.*

*Necesse est legem haberi in rebus optimis.*

*Quid opus est de Dionysio tam valde affirmare.*

*Mihi præ lassitudine opus est, ut lavem.*

191. After verbs which denote *feeling pain* or *joy* (*doleo, angor, indignor, gratum mihi est, gaudeo, delector*), and *surprise* or *wonder*, *quod* may be used, instead of the accusative with the infinitive. It takes the indicative or subjunctive after it, according as the thing spoken of is meant to be represented as a fact, or something conceived by the mind. The subjunctive is the less common. But that *quod* with the subjunctive is used in intermediate clauses with another subjunctive, or with an accusative with the infinitive, follows from the rules given above respecting the subjunctive; § 12, 141, 143.

*Gaudeo, quod te interpellavi.*

*Quod speratis, quod vocem mittitis, quod formas hominum habetis, indignantur.*

*Admiratus sum, quod nihilo minus ad me tua manu scripsisses.*

*Dupliciter delectatus sum tuis literis, et quod ipse risi, et quod te intellexi jam posse ridere.*



Dolebam, quod consortem gloriosi laboris *amiseram*.

Vetus illud Catonis admodum scitum est, qui *mirari se aiebat, quod non rideret* haruspex, haruspicem cum vidisset.

Nemo unquam *est* oratorem, quod latine loqueretur, *admiratus*.

NOTE. In general the accusative with the infinitive with *dolere* and *gaudere* is much more frequent than *quod*, but with *gratias agere* and *gratulari*, the accusative with the infinitive is hardly ever found, but *quod*.

Ego *te abfuisse* tamdiu a nobis et *doleo*, quod carui fructu jucundissimo necessitudinis, et *lætor*, quod absens omnia cum maxima dignitate es consecutus.

Res publica Romana justissimas mancipio Tusculano *gratias agere* potuit, quod ex eo duo sui conservatores *extiterunt*.

Tibi *ago gratias*, quod me omni molestia *liberas*.

*Gratulor* tibi, quod ex provincia saluum te ad tuos *recepisti*.

192. There is one other case in which *that* must be rendered by *quod*, when a demonstrative pronoun *hoc*, *illud*, *istud*, *id* precedes, or is necessarily to be supplied, to which *quod* refers, having the sense of *inasmuch as*, *as far as concerns*. The mood will be the indicative, if no other circumstance requires the subjunctive, as it does in the following passage. Socrates *hoc* Periclem ceteris præstitisse oratoribus dicit, *quod* is Anaxagoræ *fuerit* auditor.

Mihi quidem videntur homines *hac* re maxime belluis præstare, quod loqui *possunt*.

Ex tota laude Reguli *illud* est admiratione dignum, quod captivos retinendos *censuit*.

Habet *hoc* optimum in se generosus animus, quod *concitatur* ad honesta.

Phocion non in *eo* solum offenderat, quod patriæ male *consulerat*, sed etiam, quod amicitie fidem non *præstiterat*.

Aristides nonne ob *eam* causam expulsus est patriæ, quod præter modum justus *esset*?

Alcibiades ostendit Lacedæmonios *eo* nolle configere classe, quod pedestribus copiis plus quam navibus *valerent*.

NOTE. In the epistolary style, especially, *quod*, followed by an indicative, stands very frequently at the beginning of a sentence, in the sense of *as to*.

*Quod scire vis, qua quisque in te fide sit et voluntate ; difficile dictum est de singulis.*

Tu *quod me hortaris*, ut spem habeam recuperandæ salutis ; id velim sit ejusmodi, ut recte sperare possimus.

---

## USE OF PARTICIPLES.

---

### SECTION XV.

193. The participle expresses the action or condition of the verb in an adjective form, governing the case of the verb, and at the same time marking the complete or incomplete state of the action. In the Latin language this form of the verb is defective. There is a present active participle *scribens, writing*, and one for the perfect in the passive, *scriptus, written*, but there is no active participle of a completed action, e. g. *having written* ; nor any passive of a state of suffering still going on, e. g. *being written* (i. e. being in the act of being written). The Latin deponent alone has a complete participle, because the passive form has an active signification : *imitans, imitating, imitatus, having imitated*.

Ostendi *adveniens*, quicum volebam atque ut volebam filiam collocatam.

Marius duas Camertium cohortes mira virtute vim Cimbrorum *sustinentes* in ipsa acie civitate donavit.

Quotaquæque res evenit *prædicta* ab haruspicibus?

Julius decemvir decessit jure suo, ut *dentum* de vi magistratus populi libertati adjiceret.

Alexander descendit in flumen, vixque *ingressi* subito horrore artus rigere cœperunt.

194. There are besides two participles, one active and one passive, which express the action or suffering as not yet begun, and consequently as something which is to take place in future. The participle of the future active properly expresses the intention to perform an action, *scripturus* one who intends to write, but has also the signification of simple futurity, one who *will* write. The participle of the future passive expresses in the nominative the necessity that something should be undergone; *epistola scribenda*, is, a letter that *must* be written, not simply one that *will* be written. In the other cases, it serves to supply the very sensible want of a participle present passive. See 204 of this section.

Darius pervenerat ad Arbela vicum nobilem sua clade *facturus*.

Alexander Hephæstionem in regionem Bactrianam misit commeatus in hiemem *paraturum*.

Flagitiosum est ob rem *judicandam* pecuniam accipere.

In Lucullo tanta prudentia fuit in *constituendis temperandisque* civitatibus, tanta æquitas, ut hodie stet Asia Luculli institutis *servandis* et quasi vestigiis *persequendis*.

NOTE 1. The deponent verbs, whose number is considerable, afford the best means of supplying the want of an active past participle, neither the paraphrase with *cum* and the pluperfect subjunctive, nor the use of the passive participle absolute (*victoria parta*, when he had obtained the victory) being in all cases adequate (*victoriam adeptus, assecutus, consecutus*).

Pythagoras Crotonam venit, populumque in luxuriam *lapsum* auctoritate sua ad usum frugalitatis revocavit.

Alexander admitti Abdolonymum jussit, diuque *contemplatus*, corporis, inquit, habitus famæ generis non repugnat.

Utilis interdum est ipsis injuria *passis*.

NOTE 2. On the other hand the Latin writers have given to many deponent past participles a passive sense. The following have the authority of the best writers: *adeptus, comitatus, commentatus, complexus, confessus, contestatus* and *detestatus, populatus* and *depopulatus, dimensus* and *emensus, effatus, ementitus, emeritus, expertus, exsecratus, interpretatus, meditatus, metatus, moderatus, opinatus, pactus, partitus, perfunctus, periclitatus, stipulatus, testatus*. Even these are not used completely as passives by the most correct writers; for example seldom in the ablative absolute, though we find *classe partita, partito exercitu, and adepta libertate*.

NOTE 3. Some active verbs have perfect participles, passive in form, but active in sense; *jurare, canare, prandere, potare; juratus,*

*cænatus*, *pransus*, *potus*; to which are to be added the participles of the neuter passive verbs as they are called, *ausus*, *gavisus*, *solitus*, *fisus*, and *confisus*, and also *exosus*, *perosus*, and *pertæsus*. This last mentioned participle generally governs the accusative, but sometimes the genitive in conformity to the construction of *tædet*.

M. Atilius Regulus, cum consul iterum in Africa ex insidiis captus esset, *juratus* missus est ad senatum, ut, nisi redditi essent Pœnis captivi nobiles quidam, rediret ipse Karthaginem.

Quid igitur causæ excogitari potest, cur te lautum voluerit, *cænatum* noluerit occidere.

Millia tum *pransi* tria repimus.

Itaque, etsi domum bene *potus* seroque redieram, tamen id caput, ubi hæc controversia est, notavi et descriptum tibi misi.

Modica silva adhærebat, unde rursus *ausi* promptissimos prætoriorum equitum interfecerunt.

Quasi *pertæsus ignaviam suam*, quod nihil dum a se memorabile actum esset, missionem continuo efflagitavit.

Epicharis quædam *lentitudinis* eorum *pertæsa* et in Campania agens primores classiariorum Misenensium labefacere et conscientia illigare connisa est.

NOTE 4. *Habeo* forms a periphrasis with the participle perfect passive of verbs denoting knowledge, inquiry, determination, etc. *Cognitum*, *perspectum*, *perceptum*, *comprehensum*, *exploratum*, *statutum*, *constitutum*, *deliberatum*, *persuasum* *habeo*, are equivalent to *cognovi*, *perspexi*, *percepi*, etc. *Persuasum* can, of course, only be used in the neuter gender. *Habeo* is occasionally used with the participles of other verbs, besides those enumerated, with some difference of meaning, the periphrasis being more emphatic than the perfect active.

Siculi ad meam fidem, quam *habent spectatam* jam et diu *cognitam*, confugiunt.

*Habes* forsam jam *statutum*, quid tibi agendum putes.

Atticus principum philosophorum ita *percepta habuit* præcepta, ut iis ad vitam agendam, non ad ostentationem uteretur.

Ceteros item deos deasque omnes imploro atque obtestor, quorum templis et religionibus iste nefario quodam furore et audacia instinctus bellum sacrilegum semper impiumque *habuit indictum*.

Quod me hortaris, ut absolvam; *habeo absolutum* suave epos.

195. Participles are employed in Latin, to mark a number of relations, which in English are expressed by particles. The participle is used (provided that it refer to some subject mentioned in the leading proposition of the sentence), instead of a verb and relative pronoun or particle, in explana-

tory and adversative clauses, supplying the place of *which*, *as*, *when*, *although*, *because*.

Curio ad focum *sedenti* magnum auri pondus Samnites cum attulissent, repudiati ab eo sunt.

Dionysius tyrannus Syracusis *expulsus* Corinthi pueros docebat.

Risus interdum ita repente erumpit, ut eum *cupientes* (though we desire it) tenere nequeamus.

Est enim lex nihil aliud nisi recta et a numine deorum tracta ratio *imperans* honesta, *prohibens* contraria.

Dionysius cultros *metuens* tonsorios candenti carbone sibi adurebat capillum (because he feared).

Mendaci homini ne verum quidem *dicenti* credere solemus.

Bestiis ipsa terra fundit ex sese pastus varios nihil *laborantibus*; nobis autem aut vix, aut ne vix quidem, suppetunt multo labore *querentibus*.

*Ægyptii* et *Babylonii* in camporum patentium sequoribus *habitanter* omnem curam in siderum cognitione posuerunt.

NOTE 1. The most common use of the participle is, to connect with the main proposition a clause denoting the *time* of an event. The participle in the place of adversative clauses is especially to be noticed.

Regem forte *inambulantem* homo adiit.

Misericordia occurrere solet supplicibus et calamitosis nullius oratione *evocata*.

NOTE 2. With the verbs of *hearing* and *seeing*, and others of similar meaning, the participle is often used, where in English the infinitive is more common. The infinitive, however, is by no means uncommon.

Timoleon cum ætate jam provectus esset, lumina oculorum amisit, quam calamitatem ita moderate tulit, ut neque eum *querentem* quisquam *audierit*, neque eo minus privatis publicisque rebus interfuerit.

Catonem *vidi* in bibliotheca *sedentem* multis circumfusum Stoicorum libris.

Hamilcar ut Karthaginem venit, multo aliter, ac sperabat, rem publicam se *habentem* *cognovit*.

196. The participles of the perfect and future passive are used to supply the place of substantives, expressing the action of the verb, when these either do not exist in the Latin

language, or are not in common use. The participle of the perfect is chosen when the action is to be represented as completed; the future when it is conceived as still incomplete. (See more particularly of the participle future passive afterwards). This is done not only through all the cases, but with the prepositions *ad*, *ante*, *ob*, *post*, *propter*, *ab*, and *ex*; as, *hæ literæ recitatæ* magnam luctum fecerunt, the reading of this letter; *Tarentum captum*, the taking of Tarentum; *receptus* Hannibal, the reception of Hannibal; *ob receptum* Hannibalem, on account of the reception of Hannibal; *sibi quisque cæsi* regis expectabat decus, the merit of having killed the king.

*Scipio propter Africam domitam Africanus appellatus est.*

*Thebæ et ante Epaminondam natum et post ejus interitum semper alieno paruerunt imperio.*

*Lacedæmoniis nulla res tanto erat damno quam disciplina Lycurgi, cui per septingentos annos adsueverant, sublata.*

*Furius consul nuntio circumventi fratris temere se in mediam dimicationem infert.*

*Regnatum Romæ ab condita urbe ad liberatam annos ducentos quadraginta quatuor.*

*Major ex civibus amissis dolor quam lætitia fuis hostibus fuit.*

**NOTE.** The English *without* with a verbal substantive is expressed in Latin not by *sine*, but by *nisi*, *non*, *nullus* with the participle; especially in the construction of the ablative absolute.

*Cæsar exercitum nunquam per insidiosa itinera duxit nisi perspeculatus locorum situs.*

*Epicurus non erubescens voluptates persequitur omnes nominatim.*

*Romani non rogati adversus tyrannum Nabin Græcis afferunt auxilium.*

**197.** The participle of the future active is used to denote the purpose of an action, where in English we rather use the infinitive with *to*.

*Alexander ad Jovem Hammonem pergit consulturus de origine sua.*

*Brutus consul ita prælio uno accidit Vestinorum res, ut dilaberentur in oppida mœnibus se defensuri.*

*Alexander vestem detraxit corpori projecturus semet in flumen.*

Alexander milites a populatione Asiæ prohibuit parcendum suis rebus præfatus nec perdenda ea, quæ *possessuri* venerint.

NOTE 1. This participle is also often used to supply the place of the particles *and*, *since*, *when*, *because*, *although* (see 195).

Panem date homini *perituro*, nisi mature subveniatis (*because* he will perish unless you afford early aid).

Librum misi exigenti tibi *missurus*, etsi non exegisses (*and* would have sent it, although you had not asked for it).

Dedit mihi, quantum maxime potuit, *daturus* amplius, si potuisset (*and* would have given more, if, etc.).

Thymodi præcipit Darius, ut omnes peregrinos milites a Pharnabazo acciperet, opem eorum *usus* in bello (*because* he wished to use them.)

Plura locuturos abire nos jussit (*although* we were going to say more).

NOTE 2. It is to be observed that the genitive plural of these participles does not occur, probably on account of their sound, except *futurorum* and *futururum*.

198. In the cases hitherto supposed, the participle has supplied the place of a proposition, the subject of which is a noun contained in the leading proposition. If, however, a *new subject* is introduced, it is put with the participle in the ablative, independent of the leading proposition (*Ablativus absolutus* or *consequentia*). The most common use is for specifying time, hence the ablative case is used.

Pythagoras cum *Tarquinio Superbo regnante* in Italiam venisset, magnam illam Græciam cum honore disciplinæ tum etiam auctoritate tenuit.

L. Valerii virtute *regibus exterminatis* libertas in re publica constituta est.

*Dione Syracusis interfecto* Dionysius rursus Syracusarum potitus est.

199. The ablative absolute may also be used instead of the particles, *if*, *since*, *because*, *although* (see 195).

*Reluctante natura* irritus labor est.

Eclipses non ubique cernuntur, aliquando propter nubila, sæpius globo terræ *obstante*.

Mucius solus in castra Porsenæ venit, eumque interficere *proposita* sibi morte conatus est.

Haud scio, an *pietate* adversus deos *sublata* fides etiam et societas generis humani et una excellentissima virtus justitia tollatur.

Onera *contentis corporibus* facilius feruntur, *remissis* opprimunt.

Quæ potest esse jucunditas vitæ *sublatis amicitiiis*.

Multorum artificum obscurior fama est quorundam claritati in operibus eximiis *obstante numero* artificum.

Summa difficultate rei frumentariæ *affecto exercitu* nulla tamen vox est a militibus audita populi Romani majestate et superioribus victoriis indigna.

NOTE. The ablatives absolute of the future active and future passive participles are comparatively rare, especially the latter.

Deserere Rheni ripam *irrupturis* tam infestis *nationibus* non audent.

Antiochus securus admodum de bello Romano erat tamquam non *transituris* in Asiam Romanis.

Ceterum propalam comprehendi Darius non poterat tot Persarum *millibus laturis* opem.

Quis est enim, qui *nullis officii præceptis tradendis* philosophum se audeat dicere.

200. The ablative absolute, like the ablative alone (see § 6, 57, 58, and 60), is used to express the *instrument*, *cause*, and *manner* of an action.

Antonius *conjectura movenda et sedanda suspicione* aut *excitanda* incredibilem vim habebat.

Tribus hastis jugum fit humi *fixis duabus* superque eas *transversa una deligata*.

Flaminius Cælius *religione neglecta* cecidisse apud Trasimenum scribit.

201. Instead of a participle a *substantive* may be used, which expresses the action of a verb: e. g. *dux*, *adjutor* and *adjutrix*, *auctor*, *testis*, *comes*, *judex*, *interpres*, *magister* and *magistra*, *præceptor* and *præceptrix*; as, *natura duce*, the same as *natura ducente*, nature guiding; *comite fortuna*, same as *comitante fortuna*; *judice Polybio*; and names of office, *consul*, *prætor*, *imperator*, *rex*, chiefly to denote time; e. g. *Cicerone consule*, in the consulship of Cicero.



Non sequor magos Persarum, *quibus auctoribus* Xerxes inflammasse templâ Græciæ dicitur.

O quam facile erat orbis imperium occupare aut mihi *Romanis militibus* aut *me rege* Romanis.

Sapientia enim est una, quæ mæstitiam pellat ex animis, quæ nos exhorrescere metu non sinat, *qua præceptrice* in tranquillitate vivi potest omni cupiditatum ardore restincto.

Quod *deo teste* promiseris, id tenendum est.

Bellum Gallicum *C. Casare imperatore* gestum est.

Ampla domus dedecori domino sæpe fit, si est in ea solitudo; et maxime, si aliquando *alio domino* solita est frequentari.

Galba orator tanto in honore *pueris nobis* erat, ut eam etiam edisceremus.

202. The Latin having no present participle of *esse* in current use, the adjective alone often supplies the place of a participle; e. g. *deo propitio, illis consciis, invita Minerva, sereno cælo, aspera hieme, me ignaro.*

Romani *Hannibale vivo* nunquam se sine insidiis futuros arbitrabantur.

Obvius fit Miloni Clodius expeditus *nulla rheda, nullis impedimentis, nullis* Græcis comitibus.

Germani pellibus utuntur *magna corporis parte nuda.*

Si quis ex hoc loco proficiscatur *Puteolos* stadia triginta *probo navigio, bono gubernatore, hac tranquillitate*; probabile videatur se illuc venturum esse salvum.

Vix in *ipsis* tectis et oppidis *frigis infirma valetudine* vitatur.

Alia causa est ejus, qui calamitate premitur, et ejus, qui res meliores quærit *nullis suis rebus adversis.*

Voluntas si *tactis nobis* intelligi posset, verbis omnino non uteremur.

NOTE 1. Even without a substantive, the adjective sometimes stands absolutely, from the want of a participle of *esse*.

Adferebant Priverni *sereno* per diem totum rubrum solem fuisse.

NOTE 2. There are some instances of substantives being used absolutely.

Dedit jura, quis *pace et principe* uteremur (in peace and under a prince).

203. The ablative of the participle of the perfect passive, sometimes supplies *alone* the place of the whole construction of the ablative absolute, the following proposition being considered as a noun of the neuter gender, and the subject of the participle; as, Hannibal *cognito* insidias sibi paratas fuga salutem quæsit, same as *cognitis insidiis sibi paratis*. This use is confined to a few participles, as *audito*, *cognito*, *comperito* (passive), *explorato*, *desperato*, *nuntiato*, *edicto*; and some adjectives.

Alexander *audito Darium appropinquare* cum exercitu obviam ire constituit.

*Excepto*, quod non simul esses, cetera lætus.

Hoc quidem perspicuum est eos ad imperandum deligi solitos, quorum de justitia magna esset opinio multitudinis. *Adjuncto* vero, ut *videm etiam prudentes haberenter*, nihil erat, quod homines his auctoribus non posse consequi se arbitrarentur.

Multi adnantes navibus *incerto* præ tenebris, quid peterent aut vitarent, fœde interierunt.

Juxta *periculoso, ficta seu vera promeret*, monuit Liviam, ne arcana domus vulgarentur.

NOTE. There are cases in which a participle in the ablative stands so absolutely, that not even the following proposition can be considered as the subject.

Huic contra itum ad amnem Erinden, in cujus transgressu *multum certato* pervicit Vardanes.

Id quia *inaugurato* Romulus fecerat, negare Attus Navius.

Versatur in animo meo cogitatio tuendi consulatus; quæ cum *omnibus* est difficilis et magna ratio tum vero mihi præter ceteros, cui *errato* nulla venia, recte *facto* exigua laus et ab invitis expressa proponitur.

204. The participle future passive has in the nominative case (and, in the construction of the accusative with the infinitive, in the accusative also) the signification of *necessity*, less frequently of *possibility*; *laudandus* is one who *must* be praised, not *can*. The neuter of this participle is used in the nominative, or the accusative before the infinitive, with some tense of *esse*, in the sense of necessity or propriety; *laudandum est*; dico *laudandum esse*; we must praise. The person, on whom the duty or necessity rests, must be expressed in the dative, not in the ablative with *ab*.

*Diligentia colenda est nobis; hæc in omnibus rebus plurimum valet; hæc præcipue et semper adhibenda.*

Cum suo cuique judicio *utendum* sit, difficile factu est me id sentire semper, quod tu velis.

*Moriendum certe est, et id incertum, an eo ipso die.*

Omne animal *confitendum est* esse mortale.

Ut tibi *ambulandum, unguendum, sic mihi dormiendum.*

Fortes et magnanimi *sunt habendi*, non qui faciunt, sed qui propulsant injuriam.

Non *paranda nobis* solum, sed *fruenda etiam sapientia est.*

NOTE 1. In the authors of the best age, the future passive participle is not generally used to denote *possibility*. There are, indeed, some instances, in which the idea of possibility, and others in which that of propriety seems to have been intended; but they are few, and not entirely convincing.

Itaque, judices, hi, qui hospites ad ea, quæ *visenda sunt*, ducere solent, conversam jam habent demonstrationem suam.

Quam multa passus est Ulixes in illo errore diurno, cum et mulieribus (si Circe et Calypso mulieres *appellandæ sunt*) inserviret.

NOTE 2. This participle is more frequently met with in the signification of *possibility*, if connected with a *negative* or a particle of similar meaning, as *vix*

Maxime hac re permovebantur, quod civitatem ignobilem atque humilem Eburonum sua sponte populo Romano bellum facere ausam *vix erat credendum.*

Illa, quæ *patura*, non literis assecuti sunt, *neque* cum Græcia, *neque* ulla cum gente *sunt conferenda.*

NOTE 3. The ablative with *a* is sometimes found with the participle future passive instead of the dative.

Aguntur bona multorum civium, quibus est *a vobis* et ipsorum et rei publicæ causa *consulendum.*

O dii immortales! fortem et *a vobis*, judices, *conservandum* virum.

Sic enim existimare debetis rem nullam majorem, magis periculosam, magis *ab omnibus vobis providendam* ad populum Romanum esse delatam.

NOTE 4. With *dare, tradere, locare, conducere, mittere, permittere, accipere, suscipere*, and similar verbs, the purpose for which anything is given, etc., is expressed passively by the future passive participle.

*Curo*, joined with the same participle in the sense of *to cause*, is particularly to be noticed.

Rex Harpago Cyrum infantem *occidendum* tradidit.

Clodius uberrimas provincias *vezandas diripiendasque* consulibus permisit.

Lentulus attribuit nos *trucidandos* Cethego, ceteros cives *interficiendos* Gabinio, urbem *inflammandam* Cassio, totam *Italiam vastandam diripiendamque* Catilinæ.

Conon muros dirutos a Lysandro *reficiendos* curavit.

Funus ei satis amplum *faciendum* curavi.

205. In the remaining cases, this participle has sometimes, indeed, the signification of necessity, but commonly supplies the place of a participle present passive, i. e. of a continued passive state; as, occupatus sum in *literis scribendis*; peritus rei publicæ *regendæ*. The signification of futurity may sometimes be implied, but it is derived from the connexion, not from the participle itself; e. g. *consilium* libertatis *recuperandæ*; *missus* erat ad naves *recuperandas*. See the section of the Gerund.

206. This participle is formed not only from verbs transitive active, but also from those deponents which have an active sense; e. g. in *imitando* hoc scriptore hæc cautio est; of intransitive verbs only the neuter of this participle is in use with *est*, *erat*, &c. *quiescendum* est, *dormiendum*, *cundum* est.

Græcis *utendum* erit *vocabulis*.

Recto tibi invictoque *moriendum* est.

Ex quo intelligitur, si sit quispiam, qui aliquid tribuat voluptati, diligenter ei tenendum esse *ejus fruendæ* modus.

Aliquando isti principes et sibi et ceteris populi Romani universi *auctoritati parendum* esse fateantur.

## USE OF THE GERUND.

---

### SECTION XVI.

207. The gerund is in its form nothing else than the four oblique cases (genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative) of the neuter of the participle future passive. It governs the case of its verb, and in respect to signification supplies the place of a declinable infinitive of the present active, since it expresses the action or state of the verb, as a verbal substantive.

208. The relation of the gerund to the real participle future passive is the following. As the gerund has an active sense; e. g. *consilium scribendi*, the design of writing, or, to write, when the verb has a dependent accusative; e. g. *consilium scribendi epistolam*, this active construction may, without any alteration of sense, be changed to a passive; *consilium scribendæ epistolæ*, i. e. the design of a letter to be written, or, that a letter be written. What is the accusative in the active construction, is put, in the passive, in the case in which the gerund stood, and the participle agrees with it; e. g. *in scribendo epistolam* becomes *in scribenda epistola*; *ad scribendum epistolam* becomes *ad scribendam epistolam*. This change may take place, wherever no ambiguity is likely to arise from the gender not being distinguishable. It is not common, when the accusative, which the gerund governs, is the neuter of a pronoun or an adjective: for example, *studium illud efficiendi*, not *illius*; *cupido plura cognoscendi*, not *plurium cognoscendorum*, for then the gender could not be distinguished. But independently of this, the use of the participle for the gerund with the accusative is sometimes omitted, and is less frequent in some writers, Livy for example, than in others.

NOTE 1. This passive construction is also found with *utor*, *fruo*, *fungor*, and *potior*, because originally, and sometimes even in the authors still remaining, these verbs governed an accusative case.

*Justitiæ fruendæ causa videntur olim bene moratī reges constituti.*

*Expetuntur autem divitiæ cum ad usus vitæ necessarios tum ad perfruendas voluptates.*

*Hostes in spem potiundorum castrorum venerant.*

NOTE 2. A few passages occur in the Latin writers now extant in which the gerund is used in a *passive* sense.

*Hæc frequentia totius Italiæ Romam convenit uno tempore undique comitiorum, ludorum censendique causa* (to undergo the census).

*Claudius Arpocræ lectica per urbem vehendī jus tribuit.*

*Nunc ades ad imperandum vel ad parendum; sic enim antiqui loquebantur.*

209. The particular cases in which the gerund, and, under the limitations above mentioned, the participle future passive may be used, are the following.

The genitive, or gerund in *di*, is used after a substantive and after relative adjectives (see § 5, 47). Such substantives are, among others, *ars*, *causa*, *consilium*, *consuetudo*, *cupiditas*, *facultas*, *occasio*, *potestas*, *spes*, *studium*, *voluntas*. The ablatives *causa* and *gratia*, joined with the gerund in *di*, are particularly to be noticed.

*Beate vivendi cupiditate omnes incensi sumus.*

*Epaminondas studiosus erat audiendi.*

*Parsimonia est scientia vitandi sumptus supervacuos, aut ars re familiari moderate utendi.*

*Laudandus est is, qui cum spe vincendi simul abjecit certandi etiam cupiditatem.*

*Decemviris omnes provincias obeundi, liberos populos agris multandi summa potestas datur, cum velint.*

*Consul experiendi animos militum causa parumper moratus est.*

210. If the verb governs the accusative case, the passive construction with the participle is *commonly* preferred.

*Quis ignorat Gallos retinere barbaram consuetudinem hominum immolandorum?*

*Inita sunt consilia urbis delendæ, civium trucidandorum, nominis Romani extinguendi.*

*Timotheus belli gerendi fuit peritus, neque minus civitatis regendæ.*

*Vestis frigoris depellendi causa* reperta primo post adhiberi cœpta est ad ornatum etiam et dignitatem.

NOTE 1. It is an exception, if to a gerund the genitive is joined, instead of the accusative which the verb requires. This exception, however, has become the rule with personal pronouns, especially *sui*.

*Doleo tantam Stoicos nostros Epicureis irridendi sui facultatem dedisse.*

*Dixi ego idem in senatu eadem te optimatum contulisse in ante diem V. Kalendas Novembres, tum, cum multi principes civitatis Roma non tam sui conservandi quam tuorum consiliorum reprimendorum causa profugerunt.*

*Subito omnibus portis eruptione facta neque cognoscendi, quid fieret, neque sui colligendi hostibus facultatem relinquunt.*

*Non vereor, ne quis hoc me vestri adhortandi causa magifice loqui existimet.*

*Ex majore enim copia nobis quam illi fuit exemplorum eligendi potestas.*

*De se homines, qui extra istum ordinem sunt, quibus ne rejiciundi quidem amplius quam trium judicum præclaræ leges Cornelie faciunt potestatem, hunc hominem tam crudelem, tam sceleratum, tam nefarium nolunt judicare.*

NOTE 2. As the genitive serves to express quality or property (see § 5, 43), the genitive of the gerund is used with *esse* in the sense of *having a tendency to anything*.

*Regium imperium initio conservandæ libertatis fuerat.*

*Hæc prodendi imperii Romani, tradendæ Hannibali victoriæ sunt.*

*Lectis rerum summis cum animadvertisset pleraque dissolvendarum religionum esse, L. Petillio dixit sese eos libros in ignem conjecturum esse.*

NOTE 3. There are instances of this genitive being used without *esse*, which are by some explained by the ellipsis of *causa*.

*Placuit averruncandæ deum ~~que~~ victimas cædi.*

*Pulso Tarquinio multa populus paravit tuendæ libertatis et firmandæ concordie (for quæ tuendæ libertatis et firmandæ concordie essent).*

211. The dative of the gerund, or gerund in *do*, is used after adjectives which take a dative (§ 4, 30), especially after *utilis, inutilis, noxius, aptus, idoneus, par*; and after

substantives and verbs, to express the purpose and design. In the latter sense, however, at least in Cicero, the accusative with *ad* is more common. The words with which the dative of the gerund is most used are *studere*, *intentum esse*, *tempus impendere*, *consumere*, *insumere*, *operam dare*, *sufficere*, *satis esse*, *desse*, and *esse* in the sense of *serving for*, *being adequate to*. The participle future passive may be used for the gerund, as explained in 208, and examples of the dative of the gerund with the accusative are exceedingly rare.

*Aqua nitrosa utilis est bibendo.*

Brutus cum *studere revocandis* in urbem *regibus* liberos suos comperisset, securi eos percussit.

Illud *ediscendo scribendoque commune* est, utrique plurimum conferre bonam valetudinem, animum cogitationibus aliis liberum.

Oppidani pro se quisque, quæ *diutinae obsidioni tolerandæ* erant, ex agris convexerunt.

NOTE. *Esse* with the dative of the gerund is usually explained by an ellipsis of *idoneus*; but it is better to consider it, without an ellipsis, as analogous to the expression *auxilio alicui esse*.

Tributo plebes liberata, ut divites conferrent, qui *oneri ferendo essent*.

Experienda res in uno aut altero est, *sitne* aliquis plebeius *ferendo magno honori*.

Quo enim tempore me augurem a toto collegio expetitur Cn. Pompeius et Q. Hortensius nominaverunt; tu nec *solvendo eras*, nec te ullo modo nisi eversa re publica fore incolumem putabas.

212. The accusative of the gerund, or gerund in *dum*, is always dependent on prepositions, and most commonly on *ad*, *to*, or *inter*, amidst, during; sometimes on *ante*, *circa*, and *ob*. The participle is commonly used when the gerund has an accusative.

Mores puerorum se *inter ludendum* simplicius detegunt.

Musicen natura ipsa nobis videtur *ad tolerandos* facilius labores velut muneri dedisse.

Flagitiosum est eum, a quo pecuniam *ob absolvendum* acceperis, condemnare.

Equi *ante domandum* ingentes tollunt animos.

Non solum est oratoris docere, sed plus eloquentia *circa movendum* valet.



NOTE. The learner must particularly notice the use of the gerund with *inter* during, *inter eundum*, *inter bibendum*, &c. &c. whilst going, whilst drinking.

213. The ablative of the gerund is used, 1. without a preposition, as an ablative of the instrument; 2. depending on the prepositions *ab*, *cum*, *de*, *ex*, and *in*. In both cases the participle is generally used, when the gerund has an accusative.

*Hominis mens discendo alitur et cogitando.*

*Superstitione tollenda non tollitur religio.*

*Fortitudo in laboribus periculisque subeundis cernitur, temperantia in prætermittendis voluptatibus, justitia in suo cuique tribuendo.*

*Aristotelem in philosophia non deterruit a scribendo amplitudo Platonis.*

*Multa de bene beateque vivendo a Platone disputata sunt.*

*Prudentia ex providendq est appellata.*

*Scribendi ratio conjuncta cum loquendo est.*

---

## USE OF SUPINES.

---

### SECTION XVII.

214. The two supines are properly the accusative and ablative of an old verbal substantive of the fourth declension, but which govern the case of the verb.

215. The first, or supine in *um*, is used with verbs which express motion to a place (*ire*, *proficisci*, *contendere*, *pergere*, *festinare*, *venire*, *mittere*, *trajicere*) in order to express the object; e. g. *cubitum ire*, *speculatum mittere*, *oratum obsecratumque venire*. A similar expression is *nuptum dare*, to give in marriage. Yet the Latin writers generally, rather than

use the supine, prefer to use the gerund in the accusative with *ad*, in the genitive with *causa*, the future active participle, or *ut* with the subjunctive.

Philippus Ægis a Pausania, cum *spectatum ludos iret*, juxta theatrum occisus est.

Themistocles Argos *habitatum concessit*.

Fabius pictor Delphos ad oraculum *missus est sciscitatum*, quibus precibus supplicisque deos possent placare.

Nulli negare soleo, si quis *esum me vocat*.

Augustus filiam Juliam primum Marcello, Octaviæ sororis suæ filio; deinde, ut is obiit, Marco Agrippæ *nuptum dedit*.

Divitiacus Romam ad senatum *venit auxilium postulatum*.

Hannibal invictus patriam *defensum revocatus est*.

NOTE 1. *Perditum ire*, to go about to destroy, does not differ, as to meaning, from *perdere*. In Cicero it does not occur, unless it be in one instance (Ep. Fam. 14, 1), where the text is doubtful; but from its frequent occurrence in the comic poets it appears to have been much used in common life.

Sint sane, quoniam ita se mores habent, liberales ex sociorum fortunis, sint misericordes in furibus ærarii; ne illis sanguinem nostrum largiantur, et, dum paucis sceleratis parcunt, bonos omnis *perditum eant*.

NOTE 2. According to the analogy of this expression, *ire* serves to make a periphrasis with the supines of other verbs, as, *raptum*, *ereptum*, *ultum*, *oppugnatum*.

Nam ubi se flagitiis decoravere turpissimi viri, bonorum præmia *ereptum eunt*.

Neque dux Romanus *ultum iit*, aut corpora humavit, quamquam multi tribunorum præfectorumque et insignes centuriones cecidissent.

Hoc et natura prius est, tua cum defenderis, aliena *ire oppugnatum*.

216. The second supine, in *u*, is used after the substantives *fas*, *nefas*, and *opus*, and after the adjectives, *good* or *bad*, *pleasant* or *unpleasant*, *worthy* or *unworthy*, *easy* or *difficult*, and others of a similar meaning; e. g. *honestus*, *turpis*, *jucundus*, *facilis*, *incredibilis*, *memorabilis*, *utilis*, *dignus* and *indignus*. Only a few supines are used by the best prose writers in this way; e. g. *dictu*, *auditu*, *cognitu*, *factu*, *inventu*, *memoratu* and *natu* with the adjectives *grandis*, *magnus*, *major*, *maximus*, *minor*, *minimus*.

Pleraque *dictu* quam re sunt *faciliora*.

Quid est tam *jucundum cognitu* atque *auditu*, quam sapientibus sententiis gravibusque verbis ornata oratio?

Humanus animus cum alio nullo nisi cum ipso deo, si hoc *fas* est *dictu*, comparari potest.

Videte *nefas* esse *dictu* miseram fuisse Maximi senectutem.

Ita *dictu opus* est, si me vis salvum esse.

*Dictu* est *proclive* homines in beneficiis collocandis mores hominum, non fortunam sequi.

Uva primo est *peracerba gustatu*.

Non *speciosa dictu* sed *usu necessaria* in rebus adversis sequenda sunt.

Q. Maximum Cato adolescens colere cœpit non admodum *grandem natu* sed tamen jam ætate provectum.

Thucydides, Theopompus et Ephorus, Xenophon, Callisthenes, se ad historiam contulerunt, et *minimus natu* horum omnium Timæus.

NOTE 1. The best writers use *ad* and the gerund, or the infinitive with *facilis*, *difficilis*, and *jucundus*.

Epicurus eo utebatur cibo, qui et suavissimus esset et idem *facillimus ad concoquendum*.

*Facile* est *vincere* non repugnantes.

Quod *facere turpe* non est, modo occulte, id *dicere obscœnum* est.

NOTE 2. The most common construction of *dignus* is with *qui* and the subjunctive, as stated above, § 12, 152.

## FIRST APPENDIX.

---

### *Of the Division of Syllables.*

THE following rules concerning dividing syllables, established by the ancient grammarians, are still observed by the scholars of most nations.

1. A consonant which stands between two vowels belongs to the latter; *ma-ter*, *li-ber*, *ge-ner*.

2. Those consonants, which, in Greek or Latin, may together begin a word, belong together in the division of syllables; e. g. *pa-tris*, because we have the word *tres*. So *li-bri* (*brevis*), *co-cles* (*claudio*), *a-cris* (*crinis*), *a-gri* (*gratus*), *i-gnis* (*gnavus*), *o-mnis*, *da-mnum* (*μνάομαι*), *a-ctus*, *pun-ctus* (*πῦμα*), *ra-ptus*, *scri-ptus*, *pro-pter* (*Ptolemæus*), *Ca-dmus* (*δμῶες*), *re-gnum* (*γρούς*), *va-fre* (*fretus*), *du-plex* (*plus*), *a-pri-cus* (*pratum*), *a-thleta* (*αθλῆτω*), *i-pse*, *scri-psi* (*ψάψω*), *Le-sbos* (*λεβιννυμι*), *e-sca*, *pò-sco* (*scando*), *a-sper*, *ho-spes* (*spes*), *te-squa* (*squalor*), *pa-stor*, *fau-stus*, *i-ste* (on account of *stare*):

3. Consonants, which cannot begin a word, cannot remain together in dividing syllables; as *ar-tus*, *sal-tus*, *men-sa*.

4. Double consonants are divided; as *an-nus*, *col-lum*, *mit-to*.

5. In compounded words, the division must take place, so as to keep the elementary parts distinct; *inter-eram* not *inte-reram*; because the word is compounded of *inter* and *eram*. So *ab-utor*, *ab-rado*, *abs-condo*, *dis-qui-ro*, *et-iam*, *ob-latum*, *di-stringo*, *ex-silium*, *ex-undo*, *trans-tuli*, *tran-scendo*,

*alter-uter, et-enim, juris-consultus*, and *red-eo, red-undo, prod-eo, sed-itio*, because the *d*, inserted to avoid the hiatus, belongs to the first vowel.

6. But if the composition is doubtful, or wholly uncertain, or if the first word, to avoid a hiatus with the second, has lost its termination, the syllables are then divided, as though no composition had taken place ; as, *po-tes* from *pote* or *potis* and *es*, *ani-madverto*, not *anim-adverto*, *ve-neo* from *venum eo*, *ma-gnanimus*, *am-bages*, *lon-gævus*, *a-dulor*, *a-dulter*, *a-bdo-men*.

## SECOND APPENDIX.

---

### *Of the Roman Calendar.*

1. The Roman mode of reckoning the days of the month is very different from ours. According to the Julian year, February in ordinary years had 28 days; the four months, April, June, September, November, 30 days; the rest 31.

2. The days of these months are reckoned not from 1 to 30 or 31, and so denominated, but are calculated backwards from three fixed days in each month. These three days are the first, fifth, and thirteenth; they are called by the Roman names the *Kalendæ*, *Nonæ*, and *Idus* of each month. The names of the months are adjectives, and are therefore joined in the feminine gender to these three feminines.

3. But the Roman manner of counting from a given point includes that point. Thus, the third day before the nones, i. e. before the fifth, is not the second, as we should say on subtracting the numbers, but the third. Hence the practical rule: in reckoning the day of the month add one to the number from which the subtraction is made. But if the point, from which the reckoning backwards is to be made, is the first of the following month, it is not enough to bring into the computation the number of days of the current month, but the calends also must be regarded in the subtraction; that is, the number of days of the current month must be increased by two for the minuend. Thus *dies tertius ante Kal. Julias*, as June has 30 days, is the 29th of

June. Upon this rests the whole apparent difficulty of the Roman computations of time.

4. One peculiarity, a remnant of the early arrangement ascribed to Numa, has to be considered. In the four months March, May, July, and October the *Nones* fall on the 7th, the Ides on the 15th day of the month, instead of the fifth and thirteenth.

5. As to the grammatical form for dates it is to be remarked: The ablative is the case for time when? and therefore the form should be, e. g. *die tertio ante Kalendas Martias*. But *die* and *ante* are omitted, and the shorter form is *tertio Kalendas*, or with figures *III. Kal.* But in Cicero and Livy another form is exclusively, or at least very much oftener used, viz. *ante diem tertium Kalendas*, or *Nonas, Idus*. (Contracted a. d. *III. Kal.*) *Pridie* and *Postridie*, the day before and the day after, are joined with the same accusatives. It is not easy to explain the origin of this usage. It may be that *ante* being transposed, the ablative following it was changed into the accusative, as if governed by *ante*, while the accusative, really governed by *ante* (*Kalendas*), remained.

6. This expression *ante diem* is to be considered as an indeclinable substantive, prepositions, governing the accusative or ablative, being sometimes connected with it.

*Dixi ego idem in senatu cædem te optimatum contulisse in ante diem V. Kal. Novembris.*

*Supplicatio indicta est ex ante diem V. Idus Octobres cum eo die in quinque dies.*

7. *Pridie* and *postridie* are in the same manner connected with those accusatives.

*Nos in Formiano esse volumus usque ad pridie Nonas Majas.*

8. July and August were, in the times of the republic, called *Quintilis* and *Sextilis*, afterwards *Julius* and *Augustus*, in honor of the first two Cæsars.

The days of our months.	March, May, July, and October have 31 days.	January, August, and December have also 31 days.	April, June, Sep- tember, and No- vember 30 days.	February has 28, and in Leap Year 29 days.
1	Kalendis.	Kalendis.	Kalendis.	Kalendis.
2	VI } ante	IV } ante	IV } ante	IV } ante
3	V } Nonas.	III } Nonas.	III } Nonas.	III } Nonas.
4	IV } Nonas.	Pridie Nonas.	Pridie Nonas.	Pridie Nonas.
5	III } Nonis.	Nonis.	Nonis.	Nonis.
6	Pridie Nonas.	VIII } ante	VIII } ante	VIII } ante
7	Nonis.	VII } Idus.	VII } Idus.	VII } Idus.
8	VIII } ante	VI } Idus.	VI } Idus.	VI } Idus.
9	VII } Idus.	V } Idus.	V } Idus.	V } Idus.
10	VI } Idus.	IV } Idus.	IV } Idus.	IV } Idus.
11	V } Idus.	III } Idus.	III } Idus.	III } Idus.
12	IV } Idus.	Pridie Idus.	Pridie Idus.	Pridie Idus.
13	III } Idus.	Idibus.	Idibus.	Idibus.
14	Pridie Idus.	XIX } ante	XVIII } ante	XVI } ante
15	Idibus.	XVIII } ante	XVII } ante	XV } ante
16	XVII } ante	XVII } ante	XVI } ante	XIV } ante
17	XVI } ante	XVI } ante	XV } ante	XIII } ante
18	XV } ante	XV } ante	XIV } ante	XII } ante
19	XIV } ante	XIV } ante	XIII } ante	XI } ante
20	XIII } ante	XIII } ante	XII } ante	X } ante
21	XII } ante	XII } ante	XI } ante	IX } ante
22	XI } ante	XI } ante	X } ante	VIII } ante
23	X } ante	X } ante	IX } ante	VII } ante
24	IX } ante	IX } ante	VIII } ante	VI } ante
25	VIII } ante	VIII } ante	VII } ante	V } ante
26	VII } ante	VII } ante	VI } ante	IV } ante
27	VI } ante	VI } ante	V } ante	III } ante
28	V } ante	V } ante	IV } ante	Prid. Kalend.
29	IV } ante	IV } ante	III } ante	Martias.
30	III } ante	III } ante	Prid. Kalend.	
31	Prid. Kalend.	Prid. Kalend.	of the fol.	
	of the fol.	of the fol.	month.	
	month.	month.		



Perusia capta trecenti ex dediticiis electi ad aram divo Julio extractam *Idibus Martiis* hostiarum more mactati sunt.

Natus est Augustus *IX Kalendas Octobres*.

Consul comitia *in ante diem tertium Nonas Sextiles*, Latinas *in ante diem tertium Idus Sextiles* indixit.

Memoria tenent me *ante diem XIII Kalendas Januarias* principem revocandæ libertatis fuisse; me *ex Kalendis Januariis* ad hanc horam invigilasse rei publicæ.

Caligula natus est *pridie Kalendas Septembres*.

Vitellius natus est *VIII Kalendas Octobres*, vel, ut quidam, *VII Idus Septembres*.

Titus excessit *Idibus Septembribus*.

*Idibus Martiis* Romæ consulatus inibatur.

*Pridie Nonas Januarias* media hiems.

# INDEX.

## Abbreviations used in the Index.

*Abl.* ablative; *abs.* absolute; *acc.* accusative; *acc. w. inf.* accusative with infinitive; *adj.* adjective; *adv.* adverb; *aft.* after; *comp.* comparative; *conj.* conjunction; *dat.* dative; *fut.* future; *gen.* genitive; *ger.* gerund; *imper.* imperative; *ind.* indicative; *intrans.* intransitive; *nom.* nominative; *part.* participle; *pass.* passive; *perf.* perfect; *prep.* preposition; *pres.* present; *pron.* pronoun; *subj.* subjunctive; *subst.* substantive; *sup.* supine; *v.* verb; *w.* with.

*Ab w.* names of towns, 23, n. 1.  
 " " gerund, 213.  
*Abalienare w.* prep., 65.  
*Abhinc*, 70.  
*Abhorrere w.* prep., 65.  
*Ablative case*, 55 - 75.  
 " absolute, 198.  
 " " expressing instrument, cause, manner, 200.  
 " " of adj. alone 202, n. 1.  
 " " " part. alone 203.  
 " " " subst. alone 202, n. 2.  
 " " " w. adj. for part. 202.  
 " " " subst. for part. 201.  
 " aft. adj., 57.  
 " comp., 73.  
 " dignus, etc., 64.  
 " pass. v., 56.

*Ablative aft.* prep., 75.  
 " " utor, etc., 63.  
 " " v. of abounding, etc., 61.  
 " " v. of buying, etc., 59.  
 " " v. of removing, etc., 65.  
 " of circumstance, 60.  
 " " degree of superiority, 74.  
 " " gerund, 213.  
 " " instrument, 58.  
 " " manner, 67.  
 " " quality, 66.  
 " w. a, 56.  
 " " cum, 67, n. 2.  
*Abounding*, v. of, 61.  
*Absistere w.* abl., 36.  
*Absolvere w.* gen., 52.  
*Abstinere w.* abl., 65.  
*Abundare w.* abl., 61.  
*Abunde w.* gen., 45.  
*Abuti w.* abl., 63.

- Accedere* w. dat., 35.  
*Accedit* w. ut, 188.  
*Accidere* w. ut, 188.  
*Accipere* w. fut. pass. part., 204, n. 4.  
*Accomplishing*, v. of, w. ut, 185.  
*Accusative case*, 15 - 26.  
*Acc. gov. by neut. v.*, 15, n. 1.  
   " " " prep. 25.  
   " Greek, 26, 60, n. 2.  
   " of neut. pron. gov. by intrans. v., 15, n. 4.  
   " of predicate in indefinite expressions, 181.  
   " two, in acc. w. inf., 178, n. 7.  
*Acc. w. inf.*, 176 - 183.  
   " " " aft. nouns and adj., 179.  
   " " " apparently aft. v. of asking, commanding, etc., 187.  
   " " " in apposition, 180.  
   " " " in exclamations, 183.  
*Accusare* w. gen., 52.  
*Accusing*, v. of, 52.  
*Accustomed*, to be, nom. w. inf., 182.  
*Acquiescere* w. dat., 35.  
*Acquitting*, v. of, 52.  
*Ac si* w. subj., 156.  
*Ad* aft. adj., 31.  
   " w. ger., 212.  
*Addere* w. dat. and acc., 34.  
*Adeptus* in a pass. sense, 194, n. 2.  
*Adesse* w. dat., 35.  
*Adhærere* w. dat., 35.  
*Adhibere* w. dat. and acc., 34.  
   " w. prep., 35, n. 3.  
*Adhuc*, 86.  
*Adire* w. acc., 37.  
*Adjectives*, 77 - 88.  
   " agreeing w. subst., 7.  
   " as abl. abs., 202.  
   " for adv., 81, 82.  
   " for subst., 80.  
   " pron. agreeing w. subst., 7.  
   " pron. for subst., 80.  
   " several, w. conj., 79.  
   " several, without conj., 78.  
   " two, compared, 84.  
   " w. ad, 31.  
   " " dat., 30.  
*Adjectives w. in, erga, adversus*, 31.  
*Adjungere* w. dat. and acc., 34.  
*Adjutor* in abl. abs., 201.  
*Adjutrix* in abl. abs., 201.  
*Adjuvare* w. acc., 32, n. 2.  
*Adminiculi* w. dat., 32.  
*Admonere* w. subj. alone, 190.  
   " w. ut and acc. w. inf., 186, n. 1.  
*Admonishing*, v. of, 186.  
*Admovere* w. dat. and acc., 34.  
*Adoriri* w. acc., 37.  
*Adspargere*, 38.  
*Adspirare* w. dat., 35.  
*Adulari* w. dat., 32.  
*Advenire* w. in and acc., 75, n.  
*Adventare* w. in and acc., 75, n.  
*Adversari* w. dat., 32.  
*Adversus* aft. adj., 31.  
*Advising*, v. of, 186.  
   " v. of, w. subj. alone, 190.  
*Æger* w. abl., 57.  
*Ægre reperitur* w. quin, 137.  
*Æmulari* w. dat., 32.  
*Æqualis*, 31, n. 4.  
*Æqui boni*, 51, n. 3.  
*Æquius esse* in ind., 123.  
*Æquo* aft. comp., 73, n. 2.  
*Æquum esse* in ind., 123.  
*Æquum est* w. acc. w. inf., 177.  
   " " " ut, 188, n. 4.  
*Æstimare* w. gen., 51.  
*Affatim* w. gen., 45.  
*Afferre* w. dat. and acc., 34.  
*Afficere* w. abl., 61.  
*Affigere* w. dat. and acc., 34.  
*Affinis* w. dat., 31, n. 2.  
   " " gen., 47.  
*Affluere* w. abl., 61.  
*Agere id, hoc, illud* w. ut, 185.  
   " w. gen., 52.  
*Aggredi* w. acc., 37.  
*Ah*, 24.  
*Aiming*, v. of, w. ut, 185.  
*Alienare* w. prep., 65.  
*Alienus* w. ab, 64, n. 1.  
   " " abl., 64.  
*Aliquis*, 102, 103.  
*Aliquo* w. gen., 45, n. 2.  
*Alius-alium* w. v. in plur. 6, n. 2.  
*Alius* w. abl., 73, n. 4.

*Alligare* w. dat. and acc., 34.  
*Alludere* w. dat., 35.  
*Alluere* w. acc., 37.  
*Alter-alterum* w. v. in plur., 6, n. 2.  
*Alter* different from *alius*, 44, n. 4.  
*Amans* w. gen., 48.  
*Ambiguus* w. gen., 47, n. 1.  
*Amicus*, 31, n. 1.  
*Amovere* w. abl., 65.  
*Amplius* without *quam*, 83.  
*An* in double questions, 144, n. 2.  
*Ancillari* w. dat., 32.  
*Angi* w. *quod*, 191.  
*Animadvertere* w. acc. w. inf., 178.  
*An minus* in double questions, 144, n. 3.  
*An non* in double questions, 144, n. 3.  
*Annuere* w. dat., 35.  
*Ante*, 69.  
     " w. ger., 212.  
*Antecedere* w. dat. or acc., 36.  
*Antecellere* w. dat., 35.  
*Anteire* w. dat. or acc., 36.  
*Antequam*, 158.  
*Antevenire* w. dat. or acc., 36.  
*Apertum est* w. acc. w. inf., 177.  
*Apparere* w. acc. w. inf., 177.  
     " " two nom., 13.  
*Appellari* w. two nom., 13.  
*Appetens* w. gen., 48.  
*Applicare* w. dat. and acc., 34.  
*Apposition*, 8.  
*Appropinquare* w. dat., 32.  
*Aptus, qui* w. subj., 152.  
     " w. ger. in *do*, 211.  
*Arbitrari* in subj., 143, n. 2.  
     " w. two acc., 20.  
*Arcere* w. abl., 65.  
     " w. *quominus*, 138.  
*Arcessere* w. gen., 52.  
*Arguere* w. gen., 52.  
*Arripere* w. dat., 35.  
*Arridere* w. dat., 32.  
*Ars* w. ger. in *di*, 209.  
*Asking*, v. of, w. subj. alone, 190.  
*Assentari* w. dat., 32.  
*Assentiri* w. dat., 32.  
*Assidere* w. dat., 35.  
*Assis*, 51, n. 1.  
*Auctor* in abl. abs., 201.  
*Audientem esse* w. dat., 32.  
*Audire bene*, 56, n.

*Audire male*, 56, n.  
     " w. acc. w. inf., 178.  
*Audiri* used personally, 14, n. 4.  
*Audito* as abl. abs., 203.  
*Auditum*, 216.  
*Augere* w. abl., 61.  
*Auscultare* w. dat., 32.  
*Auxiliari* w. dat., 32.  
*Avarus* w. gen., 47.  
*Avidus* w. gen., 47.  
  
*Begging*, v. of, 186.  
*Bello*, 63, n. 5.  
*Bellum*, 23, n. 6.  
*Bene*, 51, n. 5.  
*Benedicere* w. dat., 32, n. 4.  
*Blandiri* w. dat., 32.  
*Boni*, 51, n. 3.  
*Buying*, v. of, 51, 59.  
  
*Calling*, v. of, agreeing w. subat. of subj. or predic., 6, n. 4.  
*Can*, verbs of, w. nom. w. inf., 182.  
*Capax* w. gen., 47.  
*Capi* w. two nom., 13.  
*Capite*, 52, n. 4.  
*Capitis*, 52, n. 4.  
*Care*, 51, n. 5.  
*Carere* w. abl., 61.  
*Causa*, 57, n. 1.  
     " w. ger. in *di*, 209.  
     " " possessive pron., 42, n. 2.  
*Cave* for imperat., 170, n. 2.  
*Cavere*, 32, n. 7.  
*Cedere*, w. dat., 32.  
*Celare* w. two acc., 18.  
*Celari* w. *de*, 18, n. 1.  
*Censere* w. acc. w. inf., 178.  
*Censeri* w. two nom., 13.  
*Ceterus*, 77.  
*Choosing*, v. of, 20.  
*Circa*, w. ger., 212.  
*Circumdare*, 38.  
*Circumfluere* w. abl., 61.  
*Circumfundere*, 38.  
*Circumire* w. acc., 36.  
*Circumjicere* w. dat. and acc., 34.  
*Circumsidere* w. acc., 36.  
*Circumsistere* w. acc., 36.  
*Circumvenire* w. acc., 36.  
*Citare* w. gen., 52.  
*Citing* before court, v. of, 52.  
*Coarguere* w. gen., 52.

- Cænare* w. gen., 51, n. 6.  
*Cænatus* in active sense, 194, n. 3.  
*Cognito* as abl. abs., 203.  
*Cognitu*, 216.  
*Cognitum habeo*, 194, n. 4.  
*Cognomine*, 60, n. 1.  
*Cognoscere* w. acc. w. inf., 178.  
*Cohærere* w. dat., 35.  
*Coire* w. acc., 15, n. 1.  
*Collective nouns* w. v. in sing., 6, n. 1.  
*Collocare* w. in and abl., 75, n.  
*Colludere* w. dat., 35.  
*Comes* as abl. abs., 201.  
*Comitatus* in pass. sense, 194, n. 2.  
*Commanding*, v. of, 186.  
*Commentatus* in pass. sense, 194, n. 2.  
*Comminari* w. dat., 32.  
*Commiserari* w. gen., 50, n. 1.  
*Commonere* w. subj. alone, 190.  
*Communicare* w. prep., 35, n. 3.  
*Communis*, 31, n. 3.  
*Comparare* w. dat. and acc., 34.  
     " " prep., 35, n. 3.  
*Comparative*, somewhat, too, 85, n.  
*Comparison* omitted, second member of, 85.  
*Comperto* as abl. abs., 203.  
*Compertus* w. gen., 52, n. 1.  
*Complere* w. abl., 61.  
*Complexus* in pass. sense, 194, n. 2.  
*Componere* w. dat. and acc., 34.  
*Compos* w. gen. 47.  
*Comprehensum habeo*, 194, n. 4.  
*Condecet* w. acc., 17.  
*Condemnare* w. gen., 52.  
*Condemning*, v. of, 52.  
*Conducere* w. gen., 51.  
     " " part. fut. pass., 204, n. 4.  
*Conducit* w. dat., 32.  
*Conferre* w. dat. and acc., 34.  
     " " prep., 35, n. 3.  
*Confessus* in pass. sense, 194, n. 2.  
*Confidere* w. abl., 32, n. 6.  
     " " dat., 32.  
*Confirmare* w. acc. w. inf., 178.  
*Congruere* w. dat., 35.  
*Conjugatio periphrastica*, 111.  
*Conjunctus*, 67, n. 3.  
*Conjungere* w. dat. and acc., 34.
- Conjungere* w. prep. 35, n. 3.  
*Conscius*, w. gen., 47.  
*Consecutio temporum*, 117 - 121.  
*Consentaneum esse* in ind., 123.  
     " " est w. acc. w. inf., 177.  
*Consentire* w. dat., 35.  
*Considerare* w. in and abl. 75, n.  
*Considering*, v. of, agreeing w. subst. of subj. or pred. 6, n. 4.  
*Consilium capere* w. ut, 185.  
     " w. ger. in di, 209.  
*Consonare* w. dat., 35.  
*Consors* w. gen., 47.  
*Constat* w. acc. w. inf. 177.  
*Constipare* w. abl., 61.  
*Constituere* w. in and abl., 75, n.  
     " " ut, 182, n. 2.  
*Constitutum habeo*, 194, n. 4.  
*Consuetudo* w. ger. in di, 209.  
*Consul* in abl. abs., 201.  
*Consulere*, 32, n. 7.  
     " " w. two acc., 19.  
*Contendere* w. sup., 215.  
     " " ut, 185.  
*Contentus* w. abl., 64.  
     " " sum w. perf. inf., 171, n. 3.  
*Conterminus* w. dat., 31, n. 2.  
*Contestatus* in pass. sense, 194, n. 2.  
*Contingere* w. ut, 188.  
*Contingit* w. dat. and inf., 177, n. 3.  
*Convenire* w. acc., 37.  
     " " in ind., 123.  
*Convenit* w. dat., 32.  
*Conviciari* w. dat., 32.  
*Convicting*, v. of, 52.  
*Convincere* w. gen., 52.  
*Creare* w. two acc., 20.  
*Creari* w. two nom., 13.  
*Creating*, v. of, 20.  
*Credere* w. acc. w. inf., 178.  
     " " dat. 32.  
*Credi* w. two nom., 13.  
*Cum*, 160 - 166.  
     " " causale, 160, 161.  
     " " in narration, 162.  
     " " primum, 167.  
     " " temporale, 160, 161, 163, 164, 165, 166.  
     " " w. ger., 213.  
*Cumulare* w. abl., 61.

*Cupiditas* w. ger. in *di*, 209.

*Cupidus* w. gen., 47.

*Cura* for imp., 170, n. 2.

*Curare* w. fut. pass. part., 204, n. 4.

“ “ *ut*, 185.

*Curiosus* w. gen., 47.

*Damnare* w. gen., 52.

*Dare* w. fut. pass. part., 204, n. 4.

“ “ two dat., 41.

*Daring*, v. of, w. nom. w. inf., 182.

*Dative*, 27–41.

“ aft. pass. v., 39.

“ governed by v., 32.

“ w. adj. and adv., 30.

“ “ *esse*, 40.

“ “ *esse*, *dare*, *venire*, 41, n.

*Dativus commodi*, 28.

“ *ethicus*, 29, n.

*Datum est nomen*, 40, n.

*Datur* w. dat. and inf., 177, n. 3.

*De* w. ger., 213.

*Debere* in ind., 123.

*Decedere* w. abl., 65.

*Decernere* w. *ut*, 186, n. 2.

*Decet* w. acc., 17.

*Declarare* w. two acc., 20.

*Declarari* w. two nom., 13.

*Decurrere* w. acc., 15, n. 1.

*Dedecet* w. acc., 17.

*Dedocere* w. two acc., 18.

*Deesse* w. dat., 32.

“ “ ger. in *do*, 211.

*Defendere*, 65, n. 2.

“ w. *quominus*, 138.

*Deferre* w. gen., 52.

*Defraudare* w. abl., 61.

*Defungi* w. abl., 63.

*Dejicere* w. abl., 36.

*Delectari* w. *quod*, 191.

*Delectat* w. acc., 17, n.

*Deliberatum habeo*, 194, n. 4.

*Deligere* w. two acc., 20.

*Demanding*, v. of, 19, 186.

*Demonstrare* w. acc. w. inf., 178.

*Demonstrative pronouns*, agreeing w. their subst., 9.

“ “ in explanatory clauses, 9, n. 2.

*Demovere* w. abl., 65.

*Depellere* w. abl., 36, 65.

*Depopulatus* in pass. sense, 194, n. 2.

*Deprehendi* w. two nom., 13.

*Depriving*, v. of, 61.

*Designare* w. two acc., 20.

*Designari* w. two nom., 13.

*Desiring*, v. of, w. nom. or acc. w. inf. 182.

*Desistere* w. abl., 65.

*Desperato* as abl. abs., 203.

*Determining*, v. of, w. *ut*, 182, n. 2.

*Deterrere* w. *quominus*, 138.

*Detestatus* in pass. sense, 194, n. 2.

*Dicere* in subj., 143, n. 2.

“ w. acc. w. inf., 178.

“ “ two acc., 20.

“ “ *ut*, 186, n. 1.

*Dici* used personally, 14, n. 3.

“ w. two nom., 13.

*Dicto* aft. comp., 73, n. 2.

*Dictu*, 216.

*Die*, 68, n. 1.

*Differre*, w. prep., 65.

*Difficilis*, w. *ad* and ger., 216, n. 1.

“ “ inf., 216, n. 1.

*Diffidere* w. dat., 32.

*Dignari* w. abl., 63.

*Dignus*, *qui* w. subj., 152, 216 n. 2.

“ w. abl., 64.

“ “ gen., 64, n. 2.

“ “ sup., 216.

*Dimensus* in pass. sense, 194, n. 2.

*Discere* w. acc. w. inf., 178.

*Discrepare* w. prep., 65.

*Displicere* w. dat., 32.

*Dissimilis*, 31, n. 5.

*Distare* w. prep., 65.

*Diversus* w. gen., 47, n. 2.

*Docere* w. two acc., 18.

*Doceri* w. *de*, 18, n. 1.

*Dolere* w. acc., 15, n. 2.

“ “ *quod*, 191.

*Dominari* w. dat., 32.

*Domus*, 23, n. 5.

*Donare*, 38.

“ w. abl., 61.

*Donec*, 159.

*Double questions*, 144, n. 2.

*Dubitare an*, 137, n. 5.

“ *num*, 137, n. 5.

“ w. inf., 137, n. 4.

*Ducere* w. acc. w. inf., 178.

- Ducere* w. gen., 51.  
*Ductus*, 57, n. 1.  
*Dum*, 159.  
     " w. pres., 159, n.  
*Dux* in abl. abs., 201.
- Ecce*, 24.  
*Edicere* w. ut, 186, n. 2.  
*Edicto* as abl. abs., 203.  
*Editus* w. abl., 56.  
*Effatus* in pass. sense, 194, n. 2.  
*Efficere* w. ut, 185.  
*Efficitur* w. ut or acc. w. inf., 188, n. 2.
- Egere* w. abl., 61.  
     " " gen., 61, n. 2.  
*Epicere* w. abl., 65.  
*Eligi* w. two nom., 13.  
*Emensus* in pass. sense, 194, n. 2.  
*Ementitus* in pass. sense, 194, n. 2.  
*Emerere* w. gen., 51.  
*Emeritus* in pass. sense, 194, n. 2.  
*En*, 24.  
*Encouraging*, v. of, 186.  
*Endeavoring*, v. of, w. ut, 185.  
*Endowing*, v. of, 61.  
*Entreating*, v. of, 19.  
*Entrusting* w. a commission, v. of, 186.
- Eo* w. gen., 45, n. 2.  
*Eodem* w. gen., 45, n. 2.  
*Ereptum ire*, 215, n. 2.  
*Erga* aft. adj., 31.  
*Esse* agreeing w. subst. of subj. or predic., 6, n. 4.  
     " w. dat., 40.  
     " " gen., 51, 53.  
     " " ger. in *do*, 211, n.  
     " " two dat., 41.
- Esteeming*, v. of, 20, 51.  
*Estimating*, v. of, 59.  
*Est qui* w. subj., 149.  
     " *quod* w. subj., 149, n. 1.  
     " *ubi* w. subj., 149.  
     " *unde* w. subj., 149.
- Etiam*, 86.  
*Evadere* w. abl., 36, 65.  
     " " two nom., 13.  
*Evenire* w. ut, 188.  
*Ex* w. ger., 213.  
     " " names of towns, 23, n. 1.  
*Excludere* w. abl., 65.  
*Exhibere se* w. two acc., 20.
- Exire* w. abl., 65.  
*Existere* w. two nom., 13.  
*Existimare* w. acc. w. inf., 178.  
     " " two acc., 20.  
*Existimari* w. two nom., 13.  
*Existunt, qui* w. subj., 149.  
*Exonerare* w. abl., 65.  
*Exoriuntur, qui* w. subj., 149.  
*Exosus* in act. sense, 194, n. 3.  
*Expedit* w. abl., 65.  
*Expedit* w. dat., 32.  
*Expellere* w. abl., 65.  
*Expers* w. gen., 47.  
*Expertus* in pass. sense, 194, n. 2.  
*Explere* w. abl., 61.  
*Explorato* as abl. abs., 203.  
*Exploratum habeo*, 194, n. 4.  
*Exsatiare* w. abl., 61.  
*Exsecratus* in pass. sense, 194, n. 2.
- Exsolvere* w. abl., 65.  
*Exsors* w. gen., 47.  
*Extremum est* w. ut, 188.  
*Extremus*, 77.  
*Ezuere*, 38.  
     " w. abl., 61.  
*Exulare* w. abl., 65.
- Fac* for imper., 170, n. 2.  
     " w. subj. alone, 190.  
*Facere certiore*, 20, n.  
     " in paraphrase, 185, n. 1.  
     " " sense of introducing, 185, n. 2.  
     " *non possum* w. *quin*, 137.  
     " *reum* w. gen., 52.  
     " w. gen., 51.  
     " " two acc., 20.  
     " " ut, 185.
- Facilis* w. *ad* and ger., 216, n. 1.  
     " " inf., 216, n. 1.  
     " " sup., 216.
- Factu*, 216.  
*Factum est nomen*, 40, n.  
*Facultas* w. ger. in *di*, 209.  
*Fallit* w. acc., 17, n.  
*Familiaris*, 31, n. 1.  
*Famulari* w. dat., 32.  
*Fas* w. sup., 216.  
*Fastidire* w. acc., 15, n. 2.  
*Favere* w. dat., 32.  
*Fecundus* w. gen., 47.  
*Feeling*, v. of, 178.

*Ferax* w. gen., 47.  
*Ferri* used personally, 14, n. 3.  
*Fertilis* w. gen., 47.  
*Fessus* w. abl., 57.  
*Festinare* w. acc., 15, n. 2.  
     "    " sup., 215.  
*Fidere* w. abl., 32, n. 6.  
     "    " dat., 32.  
*Fieri non potest* w. *quin*, 137.  
     "    "    "    " ut, 188.  
     "    " w. gen., 51.  
     "    " two nom., 13.  
*Filling*, v. of, 61.  
*Finitimus* w. dat., 31, n. 2.  
*Fit* w. ut, 188.  
*Flagitare* w. two. acc., 19.  
*Flocci*, 51, n. 1.  
*Florere* w. abl., 61.  
*Fore*, pleonastically, 174, n. 2.  
     " ut for inf. fut., 174.  
*Forgetting*, v. of, 49, n. 2.  
*Fraudare* w. abl., 61.  
*Fretus* w. abl., 64.  
*Frui*, fut. pass. part. of, 208, n. 1.  
     " w. abl., 63.  
     " acc., 63, n. 1.  
*Fugiens* w. gen., 48.  
*Fugit* w. acc., 17, n.  
*Fungi*, fut. pass. part. of, 208, n. 1.  
     " w. abl., 63.  
     " acc., 63, n. 1.  
*Future act. part.*, 194.  
     " for imper., 170, n. 4.  
     " inf. w. v. of promising and  
         hoping, 178, n. 5, 6.  
     " pass. part., 112, 194.  
     " perf. for first fut., 116, n.  
*Future subj.*, 108, 109.  
     "    " pass. expressed by  
         circumlocution, 110.  
*Futures*, use of, 116.  
*Futurum esse*, ut for fut. inf., 174.  
     " est w. ut, 187.  
     " *fuisse*, ut, 174, n. 1.  
*Gaudere* w. acc., 15, n. 3.  
     "    " *quod*, 191, n.  
*Genium* aft. adv., 45, n. 2.  
*Genitive* aft. neuter pron. and adj.,  
     45, 46.  
     "    " part., 44, n. 2, 48.  
     "    " *pudet*, etc., 50.  
     "    " relat. adj., 47.

*Genitive* aft. v. of accusing, etc.,  
     52.  
     "    "    "    " remembering,  
         etc., 49.  
     "    "    "    " valuing, 51.  
     " case, 42-54.  
     " of neuter adj., 45, n. 1.  
     " number, 43, n. 1.  
     " personal pron., 42, n.  
         2.  
     " quality, 43.  
     " used pleonastically, 45,  
         n. 3.  
     " w. *esse*, 53.  
*Genitivus partitivus*, 44.  
*Genitus* w. abl., 56.  
*Gerund*, 207-213.  
     " changed into fut. pass.  
         part., 208.  
     " in *di*, 209.  
     "    " expressing tendency  
         to anything, 210, n. 2.  
     "    " used alone, 210, n. 3.  
     "    " *do*, 211.  
     "    " *dum*, 212.  
     " passive sense, 208, n.  
         2.  
     " w. gen., 210, n. 1.  
     "    " *sui*, 210, n. 1.  
*Gloriari* w. abl., 63.  
     "    " *de*, 63, n. 3.  
*Gnarus* w. gen., 47.  
*Grandis natu*, 60, n. 3, 216.  
*Gratia* w. ger. in *di*, 209.  
*Gratificari* w. dat., 32.  
*Gratulari* w. *quod*, 191, n.  
*Gratum esse* w. *quod*, 191.  
*Habeo, quod dicam*, 149, n. 1.  
*Habere* w. gen., 51.  
     "    " perf. pass. part., 194,  
         n. 4.  
     "    " two acc., 20.  
*Haberi* w. two nom., 13.  
*Habitare* w. gen., 51, n. 6.  
*Happening*, v. of, 188.  
*Haud multum abest* w. *quin*, 137.  
     " *procul abest* w. *quin*, 137.  
*Hearing*, v. of, 178.  
*Hei*, 24, n. 2.  
*Hem*, 24.  
*Heu*, 24.  
*Hic*, 70, n. 100.



- Hic* w. gen., 45, n. 2.  
*Hindrance*, v. of, w. *quominus*, 138.  
*Hiring*, v. of, 51.  
*Hoc ætatis*, 45, n. 4.  
*Honestus* w. sup., 216.  
*Hoping*, v. of, w. acc. w. inf., 178, n. 5, 6.  
*Horrere* w. acc., 15, n. 2.  
*Huc* w. gen., 45, n. 2.  
*Hujus*, 51, n. 1.  
*Humus*, 23, n. 6.  
  
*Id quod*, 9, n. 1.  
“ *temporis*, 45, n. 4.  
*Idoneus* w. ger. in *do*, 211.  
“ *qui* w. subj., 152.  
*Ignarus* w. gen., 47.  
*Ignoscere*, w. dat., 32.  
*Ille*, 70, n. 100.  
*Immemor* w. gen., 47.  
*Imminere* w. dat., 32.  
*Immiscere* w. dat. and acc., 34.  
*Immorari* w. dat., 35.  
*Immori* w. dat., 35.  
*Impatiens* w. gen., 48.  
*Impedire* w. *quominus*, 138.  
“ “ inf., 138, n.  
*Impendere* w. dat., 32.  
*Imperare* w. dat., 32.  
“ “ *ut*, 186, n. 2.  
*Imperative*, circumlocation of the, 170, n. 2.  
*Imperative mood*, 168 – 170.  
*Imperator* in abl. abs., 201.  
*Imperfect*, 114.  
“ and perf. in letters, 114, n. 2.  
“ “ pluperf. subj. in conditional sentences, 128.  
“ perf. and pluperf. ind. for pluperf. subj., 112, n. 2.  
*Imperitus* w. gen., 47.  
*Impertire*, 38.  
*Implere* w. abl., 61.  
*Imponere* w. dat. and acc., 34.  
*Impos* w. gen., 47.  
*Impotens* w. gen., 47.  
*Imprimere* w. dat. and acc., 34.  
“ “ *prep.*, 35, n. 3.  
*Imus*, 77.  
*In* omitted, 72, n. 5.  
“ w. ger., 213.  
“ “ names of towns, 23, n. 1.  
  
*In animum inducere* w. *ut*, 185.  
*Incidere* w. dat. and acc., 34.  
“ “ *ut*, 188.  
*Includere* w. dat., and acc., 34.  
*Incommodare* w. dat., 32.  
*Incredibilis* w. sup., 216.  
*Increpare* w. gen., 52.  
*Incumbere*, 35, n. 4.  
“ w. dat., 35.  
*Incuriosus* w. gen., 47.  
*Indecet* w. acc., 17.  
*Indicative* aft. indefinite expressions, 125.  
“ in condit. propos., 124.  
“ mood, 122 – 126.  
*Indigere* w. abl., 61.  
“ “ gen., 61, n. 2.  
*Indignari* w. *quod*, 191.  
*Indignus* w. abl., 64.  
“ “ sup., 216.  
“ *qui* w. subj., 152.  
*Indirect questions*, 144.  
*Inditum est nomen*, 40, n.  
*Indormire* w. dat., 35.  
*Induere*, 38.  
*Indulgere* w. dat., 32.  
*Inesse* w. dat., 35.  
“ “ *prep.*, 35, n. 3.  
*Infamare* w. gen., 52.  
*Inferre* w. dat. and acc., 34.  
*Infimus*, 77.  
*Infinitive* as a subst., 175.  
“ in apposit., 180.  
“ future, 173.  
“ mood, 171 – 192.  
“ pass., 172.  
“ perf. aft. *pudet*, etc., 171, n. 3.  
*Infinitivus rei infectæ*, 171, n. 1.  
“ “ *perfectæ*, 171, n. 1.  
*Ingerere*, w. dat. and acc., 34.  
*Ingressi* w. acc., 15, n. 1.  
*Inherere* w. dat., 35.  
*Inhiare* w. dat., 35.  
*Inimicus*, 31, n. 1.  
*Inire* w. acc., 15, n. 1, 37.  
*Injicere* w. dat. and acc., 34.  
*Innasci* w. dat., 35.  
*Innoxius* w. gen., 52, n. 1.  
*Inquiring*, v. of, 19.  
*Insatiabilis* w. gen., 47.  
*Inscius* w. gen., 47.  
*Inscribere* w. *prep.*, 35, n. 3.

- Inscribi* w. two nom., 13.  
*Inserere* w. dat. and acc., 34.  
*Inservire* w. dat., 32.  
*Insidiari* w. dat., 32.  
*Insimulare* w. gen., 52.  
*Insolens* w. gen., 47.  
*Insolitus* w. gen., 47.  
*Inspergere*, 38.  
*Insuetus* w. gen., 47.  
*Insultare* w. dat., 32.  
*Integer* w. gen., 47, n. 2.  
*Integrum est* w. ut, 188, n. 5.  
*Intelligens* w. gen., 48.  
*Intelligere* w. acc. w. inf., 178.  
*Intelligitur* w. acc. w. inf., 177.  
*Intemperans* w. gen., 48.  
*Inter* w. ger., 212.  
*Intentum esse* w. ger. in *do*, 211.  
*Intercedere* w. *quominus*, 138.  
*Intercludere*, 38.  
     " w. abl., 65.  
*Interdicere*, 38.  
*Interdiu*, 68, n. 1.  
*Interesse* w. dat., 35.  
     " " prep., 35, n. 3.  
*Interest* w. gen., 54.  
*Interfluere* w. acc., 36.  
*Interjacere* w. dat., 35.  
*Interjections* w. acc., 24.  
     " " voc., 24, n. 1.  
*Interjicere* w. dat. and acc., 34.  
*Interponere* w. dat. and acc., 34.  
*Interpres* in abl. abs., 201.  
*Interpretatus* in pass. sense, 194, n. 2.  
*Interrogare* w. two acc., 19.  
     " " gen., 52.  
*Intervenire* w. dat., 35.  
*Intimus*, 77.  
*Intra*, 71.  
*Intrans.* v. w. acc., 15, n. 2.  
*Inutilis* w. ger. in *do*, 211.  
*Inurere* w. dat. and acc., 34.  
*Invadere* w. acc., 15, n. 1, 37.  
     " dat., 35.  
*Invenire* w. two acc., 20.  
*Inveniuntur, qui* w. subj., 149.  
*Inventu*, 216.  
*Invidere* w. acc., 32, n. 5.  
     " " dat., 32.  
*Ipsa*, 98.  
*Irasci* w. dat., 32.  
*Ire* w. acc., 15, n. 3.  
*Ire* w. sup., 215.  
*Is*, 99.  
     " such, 96.  
*Islands*, names of, 23, n. 3.  
*Iste*, 100.  
*Rinere*, 72, n. 3.  
*Joy*, v. of, w. *quod*, 191.  
*Jubere* w. acc. w. inf., 32, n. 2, 186, n. 2.  
     " " ut, 186, n. 3.  
*Jucundus* w. *ad* and ger., 216, n. 1.  
     " " inf., 216, n. 1.  
     " " sup., 216.  
*Judex* in abl. abs., 201.  
*Judicare* w. two acc., 20.  
*Judicari* w. two nom., 13.  
*Judicio* 60, n. 1.  
*Juratus* in act. sense, 194, n. 3.  
*Junctus*, 67, n. 3.  
*Justo* aft. comp., 73, n. 2.  
*Justum est* w. acc. w. inf., 177.  
*Juvare* w. acc., 32, n. 2.  
*Juvat* w. acc., 17, n.  
*Knowing*, v. of, 178.  
*Laborare* w. *ex*, 60, n. 4.  
*Lacrimare* w. acc., 15, n. 2.  
*Lætari* w. abl., 63.  
*Legem dare* w. ut, 186, n. 2.  
*Lending*, v. of, 51.  
*Lenocinari* w. dat., 32.  
*Levare* w. abl., 65.  
*Liberare* w. abl., 65.  
     " " gen., 52.  
*Licere* w. gen., 51.  
*Licet* w. dat. or acc. w. inf. 177, n. 2.  
     " " subj., 157.  
     " " " alone, 190.  
*Locare* w. fut. pass. part., 204, n. 4.  
     " " in and abl., 75, n.  
     " " gen., 51.  
*Loci* aft. adv., 45, n. 2.  
*Loco*, 72, n. 1.  
     " w. adj. and pron., 72.  
*Locorum* aft. adv., 45, n. 2.  
*Locupletare* w. abl., 61.  
*Locus* in appos., 23, n. 4.  
*Longe* w. superlative, 88.  
*Ludere* w. acc., 15, n. 2, 3.

*Ludis*, 68, n. 4.  
*Lugere* w. acc., 15, n. 2.

*Macte*, 57, n. 2.  
*Magister* in abl. abs., 201.  
*Magistra* in abl. abs., 201.  
*Magnam partem*, 60, n. 2.  
*Magni*, 51.

*Magno*, 51, n. 4.  
*Magnus* w. *natu*, 60, n. 3, 216.  
*Major* w. *natu*, 216.  
*Male*, 51, n. 5.

*Maledicere* w. dat., 32.  
*Malle* w. subj. alone, 190.

*Mandare* w. *ut*, 186, n. 2.  
*Manere* w. two nom., 13.  
*Manifestus* w. gen., 52, n. 1.  
*Maximi*, 51.

*Maximus* w. *natu*, 216.  
*Mederi* w. dat., 32.  
*Medicari* w. dat. and acc., 32, n. 3.  
*Meditari* w. *ut*, 185.  
*Meditatus* in pass. sense, 194, n. 2.  
*Medius*, 77.

*Melius esse* in subj., 123.  
*Meminisse* w. acc. w. inf., 178.  
 " " *de*, 49, N. 3.  
 " " pres. inf., 171, n. 2.

*Memor* w. gen., 47.  
*Memorabilis* w. sup., 216.  
*Memoratu*, 216.  
*Metatus* in pass. sense, 194, n. 2.

*Metuens* w. gen., 48.  
*Metuere*, 32, n. 7.

*Militia*, 23, n. 6.  
*Minari* w. dat., 32.

*Minimi*, 51.  
*Minimus* w. *natu*, 216.  
*Ministrare* w. dat., 32.  
*Minor* w. *natu*, 60, n. 3, 216.

*Minoris*, 51.  
*Minus* without *quam*, 83.

*Mirum quantum*, 81.  
*Miserari* w. acc., 50, n. 1.  
*Misereri* w. gen., 50, n. 1.  
*Miserescere* w. gen., 50, n. 1.

*Miserescit* w. gen., 50.  
*Miseret* w. gen., 50.

" " acc., 16.  
*Miseretur* w. gen., 50.

*Mittere* w. fut. pass. part., 204, n. 4.

" " sup., 215.

*Moderatus* in pass. sense, 194, n. 2.

*Modicus* w. gen., 47, n. 1.  
*Monere* w. *de*, 49, n. 3.  
 " " subj. alone, 190.  
 " " *ut* and acc. w. inf., 186, n. 1.

*Moods*, 122-192.  
*Morigerari* w. dat., 32.

*Morte*, 52, n. 4.  
*Mortis*, 52, n. 4.  
*Mos* or *moris est* w. *ut*, 188, n. 3.

*Movere* w. abl., 65.  
*Multa*, 52, n. 4.

*Multa*, 52, n. 4.  
*Multo* w. superlative, 88.  
*Multum* and *multa*, 81.

*Natu*, 60, n. 3, 216.  
*Natus* w. acc., 21, n. 2.  
 " " abl., 56.

*Natione*, 60, n. 1.  
*Nauci*, 51, n. 1.  
*Ne* aft. v. of fearing, 135.  
 " enclitic in double questions, 144, n. 2.

" in order that not, lest, 134.  
 " w. imperat., 170.  
 " *non*, 135, n. 3.

*Necessario* aft. comp., 73, n. 2.  
*Necesse esse* w. acc. w. inf., 177.  
 " " " dat. w. inf., 177, n. 3.

" " in indic., 123.  
 " " w. *ut* and acc. w. inf., 190, n. 3.  
*Necne* in double questions, 144, n. 3.

*Nefas* w. sup., 216.  
*Negare* w. acc. w. inf., 178.

*Negligens* w. gen., 47.  
*Nemo est, qui* w. subj., 149.

" " etc. w. *quin*, 137.  
*Nescius* w. gen., 47.

*Neuter* different from *nullus*, 44, n. 4.

*Neuter* of adjectives, 6, n. 3.  
*Neve* or *neu*, 135, n. 1.

" " w. imper., 170.  
*Nihil*, 45.

" *abest* w. *quin*, 137.  
 " *antiquius habeo, quam* w. *ut*, 186.

- Nihil est, quod* w. subj., 149, n. 1.  
 " " etc. w. *quin*, 137.  
 " *prætermitto* w. *quin*, 137.  
 " *recusò* w. *quin*, 137.  
*Nihili*, 51, n. 1.  
*Nihilo*, 51, n. 4.  
*Nimio* aft. comp., 73, n. 2.  
*Nimum quantum*, 81.  
*Nisi* w. part., 196, n.  
*Niti* w. abl., 63.  
 " " in, *ad*, 63, n. 4.  
 " " *ut*, 185.  
*Nocere* w. dat., 32.  
*Nocte*, 68, n. 1.  
*Noctu*, 68, n. 1.  
*Noli* for imperat., 170, n. 2.  
*Nolle*, 32, n. 7.  
 " w. subj. alone, 190.  
*Nomen est* w. dat., 40.  
*Nominare* w. two acc., 20.  
*Nominari* w. two nom., 13.  
*Nominative case*, 13, 14.  
 " for vocat., 76, n. 3.  
 " in appos. to vocat., 76, n. 2.  
*Non dubito* w. *quin*, 137.  
 " " " inf., 137, n. 4.  
 " *est dubium* w. *quin*, 137.  
 " " *quod* w. subj., 149, n. 1.  
 " *habeo, quod* w. subj., 149, n. 1.  
 " *quin*, not as if not, 136.  
 " *quo non*, not as if not, 136.  
 " " not as if, 136, n.  
 " *quod*, not as if, 136.  
 " w. part., 196, n.  
*Nostrum* different from *nostri*, 44, n. 5. 89.  
*Noxius* w. gen., 52, n. 1.  
 " " ger. in *do*, 211.  
*Nubere* w. dat., 29.  
*Nudare* w. abl., 61.  
*Nullus*, 82, n.  
 " *est, qui* w. subj., 149.  
 " " etc. w. *quin*, 137.  
 " w. part., 196, n.  
*Num* in double questions, 144, n. 2.  
*Numerari* w. two nom., 13.  
*Nuntiare* w. acc. w. inf., 178.  
 " " *ut*, 186, n. 1.  
*Nuntiari* used personally, 14, n. 4.  
*Nuntiatio* as abl. abs., 203.  
*Nusquam* w. gen., 45, n. 2.  
*Nuptum dare*, 215.  
*O*, 24.  
*Ob* w. ger., 212.  
*Obambulare* w. dat., 35.  
*Obedire* w. dat., 32.  
*Obesse* w. dat., 32.  
*Obire* w. acc., 15, n. 1.  
*Objective* gen., 42.  
*Objicere* w. dat. and acc., 34.  
*Oblivisci* w. acc. w. inf., 178.  
*Obrepere* w. dat., 35.  
*Obsequi* w. dat., 32.  
*Observans* w. gen., 48.  
*Obstare* w. dat., 32.  
*Obtemperare* w. dat., 32.  
*Obtrectare* w. dat., 32.  
*Obversari* w. dat., 35.  
*Occasio* w. ger. in *di*, 209.  
*Occumbere*, 35, n. 5.  
*Occurrere* w. dat., 32.  
 " " *ut*, 188.  
*Officere* w. dat., 32.  
 " " *quominus*, 138.  
*Offundere* w. dat. and acc., 34.  
*Old*, 21, n. 2.  
*Olere* w. acc., 15, n. 2.  
*Opera*, 58, n. 1.  
*Operam dare* w. ger. in *do*, 211.  
 " " *ut*, 185.  
*Opinari* w. acc. w. inf., 178.  
*Opinatus* in pass. sense, 194, n. 2.  
*Opinione*, 60, n. 1.  
 " aft. comp., 73, n. 2.  
*Opitulari* w. dat., 32.  
*Oportere* in indic., 123.  
 " w. *ut* or acc. w. inf., 190, n.  
*Oppidum* in appos., 23, n. 4.  
*Opponere* w. dat. and acc., 34.  
*Oppugnatum ire*, 215, n. 2.  
*Opus* w. sup., 216.  
 " *est*, 62.  
 " " w. acc. w. inf., 177.  
 " " " *ut* or inf., 190, n.  
*Orare* w. subj. alone, 190.  
 " " two acc., 19.  
*Oratio obliqua* in acc. w. inf., 178, n. 1, 2, 3.  
*Orbare* w. abl., 61.  
*Ornare* w. abl., 61.  
*Ortus* w. abl., 56.

- O si* w. subj., 139, 155.  
*Ostendere* w. acc. w. inf., 178.  
*Ought*, w. nom. w. inf., 182.
- Pactus* in pass. sense, 194, n. 2.  
*Pain*, v. of suffering, w. *quod*, 191.  
*Palpari* w. dat., 32.  
*Parare* w. *ut*, 182, n. 2.  
*Parcere* w. dat., 32.  
*Par esse* in ind., 123.  
   " w. ger. in *do*, 211.  
*Pars-pars* w. v. in plural, 6, n. 2.  
*Particeps* w. gen., 47.  
*Participles* agreeing w. subst., 7.  
   " connected with several subst., 11.  
   " for subst., 80.  
   " fut. act., 197.  
   " " pass., 204.  
   " " " w. *a*, 204, n. 3.  
   " " " as part. pres., 205.  
   " " " of dep. v., 206.  
   " in explanatory and ad-  
   versative clauses, 195.  
   " of dep. v., 194, n. 1.  
   " " " in pass.  
   sense, 194, n. 2.  
   " perf. and fut. pass. for  
   verbal subst., 196.  
   " use of, 193-206.  
   " w. gen., 48.  
   " " *nisi*, *non*, *nullus*,  
   196, n.  
   " " v. of hearing and  
   seeing, 195, n. 2.
- Partim* w. gen., 45.  
*Partitus* in pass. sense, 194, n. 2.  
*Parum* w. gen., 45.  
*Parvi*, 51.  
*Parvo*, 51, n. 4.  
*Pati* w. subj. alone, 190.  
*Patiens* w. gen., 48.  
*Patrocinari* w. dat., 32.  
*Peculiaris*, 31, n. 3.  
*Pecunia*, 52, n. 4.  
*Pecuniæ*, 52, n. 4.  
*Pellere* w. abl., 65.  
*Pendere* w. gen., 51.  
*Pensi*, 51, n. 1.  
*Per*, 57, n. 1, 58, n. 1, 2.  
*Perceptum habeo*, 194, n. 4.
- Percipere* w. acc. w. inf., 178.  
*Percontari* w. two acc., 19.  
*Percurrere* w. acc., 15, n. 1.  
*Perditum ire*, 215, n. 1.  
*Perfect* and pluperf. ind. for plu-  
   perf. subj., 111, n.  
   " in narration, 113.  
   " pass. part., 193.  
   " subj., 115.  
*Perficere* w. *ut*, 185.  
*Perfrui* w. abl., 63.  
*Perfunctus* in pass. sense, 194, n. 2.  
*Perfungi* w. abl., 63.  
*Pergere* w. sup., 215.  
*Perhibere* w. acc. w. inf., 178.  
*Perhiberi* w. two nom., 13.  
*Periclitatus* in pass. sense, 194, n.  
   2.
- Peritus* w. gen., 47.  
*Permagni*, 51.  
*Permagno*, 51, n. 4.  
*Permittere* w. fut. pass. part., 204,  
   n. 4.  
   " " subj. alone, 190.  
*Permitting*, v. of, w. subj. alone,  
   190.
- Perosus* in act. sense, 194, n. 3.  
*Personal and possessive pron.* in  
   acc. w. inf., 178, n. 4.  
   " pron. expressed, 14.  
   " " w. v., 12.
- Perspectum habeo*, 194, n. 4.  
*Perspicitur* w. acc. w. inf., 177.  
*Persuadere* w. *ut* and acc. w. inf.,  
   186, n. 1.
- Persuasum habeo*, 194, n. 4.  
*Pertasus* in act. sense, 194, n. 3.  
*Petere* w. *ab*, 19.  
*Piger* w. gen., 47, n. 1.  
*Piget* w. acc., 16.  
   " " gen., 50.  
*Pili*, 51, n. 1.  
*Placere* w. dat., 32.  
*Plenus* w. gen., 47.  
*Plorare* w. acc., 15, n. 2.  
*Plurimi*, 51.  
*Plurimo*, 51, n. 4.  
*Plurix*, 51.  
*Plus* without *quam*, 83.  
*Pœnitet* w. acc., 16.  
   " " gen., 50.  
*Polliceri* w. acc. w. inf., 178.  
*Ponere* w. in and abl., 75, n.

*Populatus* in pass. sense, 194, n. 2.  
*Poscere* w. two acc., 19.  
*Posse* in ind., 123.  
*Possessive pron.* for gen. of personal pron., 42, n. 2, 53, 54.  
*Post*, 25.  
*Posteaquam*, 167, n. 2.  
*Posthabere* w. dat. and acc., 34.  
*Postponere* w. dat. and acc., 34.  
*Postquam*, 167, n. 2.  
*Postremus*, 77.  
*Postulare* w. gen., 52.  
     "    " two acc., 19.  
*Potens* w. gen., 47.  
*Potestas* w. ger. in *di*, 209.  
*Potiri* w. abl., 63.  
     "    " gen., 63, n. 2.  
*Potus* in act. sense, 194, n. 3.  
*Præbere se* w. two acc., 20.  
*Præcedere* w. dat. or acc., 36.  
*Præceptor* in abl. abs., 201.  
*Præceptrix* in abl. abs., 201.  
*Præcurrere* w. dat. or acc., 36.  
*Prædñus* w. abl., 64.  
*Præesse* w. dat., 35.  
*Præferre* w. dat. and acc., 34.  
*Præficere* w. dat. and acc., 34.  
*Prægredi* w. dat. or acc., 36.  
*Præire* w. dat., 35.  
*Præminere* w. dat., 35.  
*Præponere* w. dat. and acc., 34.  
*Præscribere* w. *ut*, 186, n. 2.  
*Præsidera* w. dat., 35.  
*Præstare se* w. two acc., 20.  
*Præstolari* w. dat., 32.  
*Præterfluere* w. acc., 36.  
*Prætergredi* w. acc., 36.  
*Præterire* w. acc., 15, n. 1, 36.  
*Præterit* w. acc., 17, n.  
*Prætervehi* w. acc., 36.  
*Prætervolare* w. acc. 36.  
*Prætor* in abl. abs., 201.  
*Prævalere* w. dat., 35.  
*Pransus* in act. sense, 194, n. 3.  
*Precari* w. subj. alone, 190.  
*Predicata*, 5.  
     "    a verb, 6.  
     "    *esse* w. adjective part of speech, 6.  
     "    *esse* w. subst., 6.  
*Prepositions* for gen., 42, n. 1.  
     "    "    " partitivus, 44, n. 3.

*Prepositions* governing acc., 25.  
*Present* act. part., 193.  
     "    and perf. subj. in conditional propositions, 128.  
     "    "    "    " in a softened assertion, 129.  
     "    for past tenses, 113, n. 1.  
     "    subj. for imperat., 131.  
     "    " in questions implying doubt, 130.  
     "    w. the force of perf., 106, n. 3.  
*Primus*, 77.  
*Priusquam*, 158.  
*Privare* w. abl., 61.  
*Pro*, 24.  
*Pro nihilo*, 51, n. 2.  
     "    *se quisque* w. v. in pl., 6, n. 2.  
*Prodesse* w. dat., 32.  
*Prodest* w. dat. w. inf., 177, n. 3.  
*Prodi* used personally, 14, n. 3.  
*Proficisci* w. sup., 215.  
*Prohibere*, 65, n. 2.  
     "    w. abl., 65.  
     "    " *quominus*, 138.  
     "    " inf. 138, n.  
*Prohiberi* used personally, 14, n. 3.  
*Promising*, v. of, w. acc. w. inf., 178, n. 5, 6.  
*Promittere* w. acc. w. inf., 178.  
*Pronouns*, 89 – 103.  
     "    connected w. or referring to several subst., 11.  
*Prope*, 31, n. 2.  
*Properare* w. acc., 15, n. 2.  
*Propinquare* w. dat., 32.  
*Propinquus* w. dat., 31, n. 2.  
*Proprius*, 31, n. 3.  
*Propter*, 57, n. 1.  
*Prospicere*, 32, n. 7.  
*Prostare* w. gen., 51.  
*Providere*, 32, n. 7.  
*Providus* w. gen., 47.  
*Prudens* w. gen., 47.  
*Pudet* w. acc., 16.  
     "    " gen., 50, n. 2.  
     "    " inf. perf., 171, n. 3.  
*Pugnare* w. acc., 15, n. 3.  
*Purgare* w. gen., 52.  
*Purpose and object* expressed by the subj., 132.  
*Putare* in subj., 143, n. 2.  
     "    w. gen., 51.

*Putari* w. two nom., 13.

" " two acc., 20.

*Quacunque* w. indic., 125.

*Quærere* w. *ab, de, ex*, 19.

*Quæso* w. two acc., 19.

*Qualis posse* w. superlative, 88.

*Quam*, 69, n. 3.

" w. superlative, 88.

" *posse* w. superlative, 88.

" *pro*, 73, n. 3.

" *si* w. subj., 156.

*Quamdiu*, 159.

*Quamquam*, 157, n. 1.

*Quamvis* w. subj., 157, n. 2.

*Quanti*, 51.

*Quanticunque*, 51.

*Quantivis*, 51.

*Quantuluscunque* w. indic., 125.

*Quantum est* w. subj., 149.

*Quantus posse* w. superlative, 88.

*Quantuscunque* w. indic., 125.

*Quaque* w. indic., 125.

*Quasi* w. subj., 156.

*Qui* for *ut ego, tu, is*, 146.

*Qui, quæ, quod est* w. subj., 149.

*Quicunque* w. indic., 125.

*Quid est, cur* w. subj., 149, n. 1.

" " *quod* w. subj., 149, n. 1.

*Quidam*, 103.

*Quin*, 187.

" for acc. *quod non*, 137, n. 1.

" " *qui, quæ, quod non*, 137.

" in question and exhortation,

137, n. 2.

*Quippe qui* w. subj., 150, n.

*Quis est, qui* w. subj., 149.

*Quispiam*, 102.

*Quisquam*, 101.

*Quisque* w. v. in plur., 6, n. 2.

" " superlative, 87.

*Quisquis* w. indic., 125.

*Quo*, in order that, 136.

" w. gen., 45, n. 2.

*Quoad*, 159.

*Quocunque* w. indic., 125.

*Quod* aft. demonstr. pron., 192.

" " v. of pain, joy, etc.,

191.

*Quominus*, in order that not, 138.

*Quoquo* w. indic., 125.

*Quotquot* w. indic., 125.

*Quotusquisque est* w. subj., 149.

*Raptum ire*, 215, n. 2.

*Recens*, 81.

*Recipere* w. acc., 15, n. 2.

*Recordari* w. acc. w. inf., 178.

" " *de*, 49, n. 3.

*Rectum est* w. *ut*, 188, n. 4.

*Recusare* w. *quominus*, 138.

*Reddere* w. two acc., 20.

*Redolere* w. acc., 15, n. 2.

*Redundare* w. abl., 61.

*Referre* w. abl., 61.

*Referre* w. acc. w. inf., 178.

*Refert* w. gen., 54.

*Refertus* w. abl. and gen., 61, n. 1.

*Refragari* w. dat., 32.

*Relative pron.* agreeing w. person-

al pron. implied, 97.

" " " " its

subst., 9.

" " and adverbs w.

subj., 145-147.

" " as or such as, 96.

" " in explanatory

clauses, 9, n. 2.

" " position of, 93.

" " w. adj., 94.

" " subst. in appo-

sit., 95.

*Relinquitur* w. *ut*, 188.

*Reliquum est* w. *ut*, 188.

*Reliquus*, 77.

*Remaining*, v. of, 188.

*Remembering*, v. of, 49, n. 2.

*Reminding*, v. of, 49, n. 1.

" " w. subj. alone,

190.

*Removere* w. abl., 65.

*Remunerari* w. abl., 61.

*Reniti* w. dat., 32.

*Renunciari* w. two nom., 13.

*Reperire* w. two acc., 20.

*Reperiri* w. two nom., 13.

*Reperiuntur, qui* w. subj., 149.

*Reposcere* w. two acc., 19.

*Repugnare* w. dat., 32.

" " *quominus*, 138.

*Res* for neuter adj., 4, n. 2.

*Resistere* w. dat., 32.

*Respondere* w. dat., 32.

*Restat* w. *ut*, 188.

*Retinens* w. gen., 48.

*Reus* w. gen., 52, n. 1.

*Rex* in abl. abs., 201.

*Rogare* w. subj. alone, 190.

" " two acc., 19.

*Rudis* w. gen., 47.

*Rus*, 23, n. 5.

*Salutari* w. two. nom., 13.

*Sapere* w. acc., 15, n. 2.

*Satiare* w. abl., 61.

*Satis* w. gen., 45.

" *esse* w. ger. in *do*, 211.

" *est* w. perf. inf., 171, n. 3.

" *habere* w. perf., inf., 171, n. 3.

*Saturare* w. abl., 61.

*Satus* w. abl., 56.

*Saucius* w. abl., 57.

*Saying*, v. of, w. acc. w. inf., 178.

*Scatere* w. abl., 61.

*Scire* w. acc. w. inf., 178.

*Scribere* w. *ut*, 186, n. 1.

*Securus* w. gen., 47, n. 1.

*Sed quia*, but because, 136.

" *quod*, but because, 136.

*Seeing*, v. of, w. acc. w. inf., 178.

*Selling*, v. of, 51, 59.

*Sententia*, 60, n. 1.

*Sentire* w. acc. w. inf., 178.

*Sequitur*, hence it follows, 188, n. 1.

" w. *ut*, 188.

*Servire* w. acc., 15, n. 3.

" " dat., 32.

*Showing*, v. of, 20.

*Similis*, 31, n. 5.

*Simulac*, 167.

*Simulatque*, 167.

*Sinere* w. subj. alone, 190.

*Sive - sive* w. indic., 126.

*Solito* aft. comp., 73, n. 2.

*Solvere* w. abl., 65.

" " gen., 65, n. 3.

*Somniare* w. acc., 15, n. 3.

*Space*, extent of, 21.

*Spe* aft. comp., 73, n. 2.

*Spes* w. ger. in *di*, 209.

*Spoliare* w. abl., 61.

*Spondere* w. acc. w. inf., 178.

*Stare* w. gen., 51.

*State* of action or condition, 104.

*Statuere* w. acc. w. inf., 178.

" " in and abl., 75, n.

" " *ut*, 182, n. 2.

*Statutum habeo*, 194, n. 4.

*Sterilis* w. gen., 47.

*Still*, 86.

*Stipare* w. abl., 61.

*Stipulatus* in pass. sense, 194, n. 2.

*Studere* w. dat., 32.

" " ger. in *do*, 211.

" " *ut*, 182, n. 2, 185.

*Studium* w. ger. in *di*, 209.

*Studiosus* w. gen., 47.

*Suadere* w. subj. alone, 190.

*Subesse* w. dat., 35.

*Subire* w. acc., 15, n. 1.

*Subject*, 3.

" a subst., 4.

" an adj., 4, n. 2

" " incl. part of speech, 4.

" a sentence, 4.

" not always expressed, 4, n. 1.

" consisting of several subst., 10, n. 1.

*Subjective* gen., 42.

*Subjunctive* aft. compar. w. *quam* qui, 148.

" " dignus, etc., 152.

" " indefn. expressions, 149.

" " relat. pron. and adverbs, 145 - 153.

" in intermediate clauses, 140 - 143.

" mood, 127 - 167.

*Sublime*, 81.

*Substantives* connected by *aut*, 10, n. 2.

" " " *nec*, 10, n. 2.

" w. *cum*, 10, n. 3.

*Substernere* w. dat. and acc., 34.

*Subvenire* w. dat., 32.

*Succumbere* w. dat., 35.

*Succurrere* w. dat., 32.

*Sufficere* w. ger. in *do*, 211.

*Sui*, 90, 92.

" in acc. w. inf., 178, n. 4.

" " intermediate clauses, 143, n. 1.

*Summus*, 77.

*Sunt, qui* w. subj., 149.

*Superesse* w. dat., 35.

*Superest* w. *ut*, 188.

*Supergredi* w. acc., 36.

*Superstare* w. dat., 35.



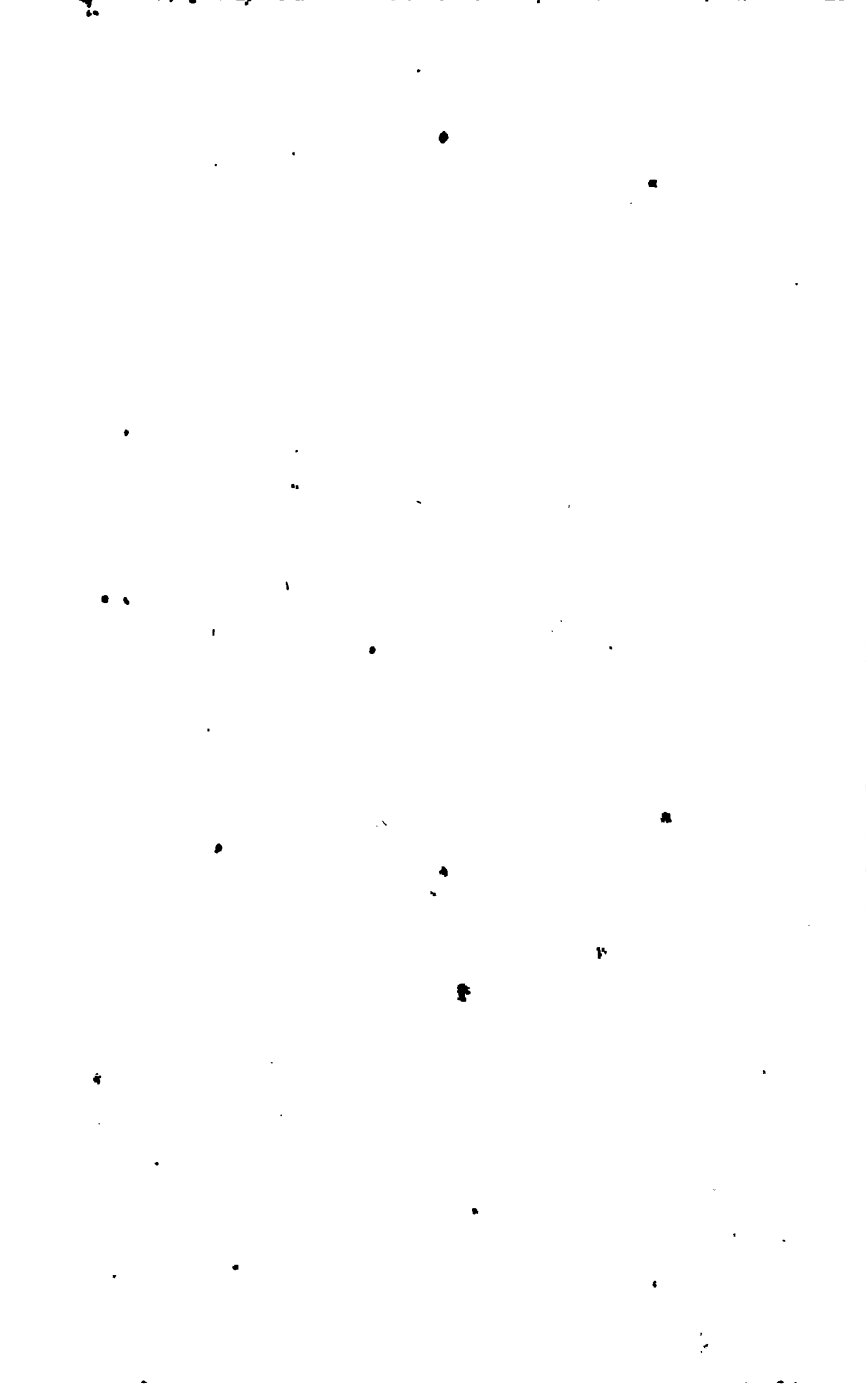
- Superstes*, 31, n. 4.  
*Supervadere* w. acc., 36.  
*Supervenire* w. dat., 35.  
*Supervivere* w. dat., 35.  
*Supine*, first, 215.  
     " second, 216.  
*Supines*, 214 - 216.  
*Supponere* w. dat. and acc., 34.  
*Surprise*, v. of, w. *quod*, 191.  
*Suscipere* w. fut. pass. part., 204, n. 4.  
*Susplicari* w. acc. w. inf., 178.  
*Suus*, 91, 92.  
     " in acc. w. inf., 178, n. 4.  
     " " intermediate clauses, 143, n. 1.  
*Syntax*, 1.  
*Tedet* w. acc., 16.  
     " " gen., 50.  
*Tamquam* w. subj., 156.  
*Tanti*, 51.  
*Tantidem*, 51.  
*Temperans* w. gen., 48.  
*Temperare mihi non possum*, 137.  
*Tempore* and *in tempore*, 68, n. 3.  
*Tempus impendere*, etc. w. ger. in *do*, 211.  
*Tenax* w. gen., 47.  
*Tenere me non possum* w. *quin*, 137.  
*Tenses* 104 - 121.  
*Terra marique*, 72.  
*Tentare* w. *ut*, 182, n. 2.  
*Testatus* in pass. sense, 194, n. 2.  
*Thinking*, v. of, w. acc. w. inf., 178.  
*Time* of action or condition, 104.  
     " extent of, 21.  
     " in how long, 71.  
     " the point of, 68, 69, 70.  
*Timere*, 32, n. 7.  
*Tolerans* w. gen., 48.  
*Tollere* w. abl., 61.  
*Towns*, names of, 22, 23.  
*Tradi*, used personally, 14, n. 3.  
*Trajicere* w. sup., 215.  
*Tranare* w. acc., 36.  
*Transducere* w. two acc., 18, n. 2.  
*Transire* w. acc., 36.  
*Transjicere* w. two acc., 18, n. 2.  
*Transmittere* w. two acc., 18, n. 2.  
*Transvolare* w. acc., 36.  
*Turpis* w. sup., 216.  
*Ubi*, 167.  
     " w. gen., 45 n. 2.  
*Ubique* w. ind., 125.  
     " " gen., 45, n. 2.  
*Ubiubi* w. ind., 125.  
*Ultimus*, 77.  
*Ultum ire*, 215, n. 2.  
*Unde* w. gen., 45, n. 2.  
*Undecunque* w. ind., 125.  
*Undeunde* w. ind., 125.  
*Unwillingness*, v. of, w. subj. alone, 190.  
*Urbs* in apposition, 23, n. 4.  
*Urging*, v. of, 186.  
*Usquam* w. gen., 45, n. 2.  
*Usu venit* w. *ut*, 188.  
*Usus est*, 62, n. 2.  
*Usurpari* w. two nom., 13.  
*Ut*, 133, 167.  
     " aft. *equum est*, etc., 188, n. 4.  
     " " v. of fearing, 135.  
     " although, w. subj., 157.  
     " o that, w. subj., 155.  
     " w. v. of begging, etc., 186.  
     " " " " happening and remaining, 188.  
     " *ne* for *ne*, 135, n. 2.  
     " *primum*, 167.  
     " *posse* w. superlative, 88.  
     " *qui* w. subj., 150, n.  
*Utinque* w. ind., 125.  
*Uter*, different from *quis*, 44, n. 4.  
*Uterque* w. v. in plural, 6, n. 2.  
*Uti* w. abl., 63.  
     " " acc., 63, n. 1.  
*Utilis* w. sup., 216.  
*Utilius esse* in indic., 123.  
*Utinam* w. subj., 139, 155.  
     " *ne* w. subj., 155, n.  
     " *non* w. subj., 155, n.  
*Utpote qui* w. subj., 150, n.  
*Utrum* in double questions, 144, n. 2.  
*Utut* w. ind., 125.  
*Vaccare* w. abl., 61.  
     " " dat., 29.  
*Vacuum* w. abl., 61, n. 1.  
*Vae*, 24, n. 2.  
*Valuing*, v. of, 51, 59.  
*Vapulare*, 56, n.

- Velim* and *velim ut* for *imper.*, 170, n. 3.  
*Velie*, 32, n. 7.  
     " w. inf. pass., 182, n. 1.  
*Vclut* w. subj., 156.  
*Vendere* w. gen., 51.  
*Venire* w. gen., 51.  
     " " sup., 215.  
     " " two dat., 41.  
*Verba sentiendi et declarandi*, 178.  
*Verisimile est* w. acc. w. inf., 177.  
*Veritum est* w. acc., 16.  
*Vero* aft. comp., 73, n. 2.  
*Verum est* w. acc. w. inf., 177.  
     " " " ut, 188, n. 4.  
*Vesci* w. abl., 63.  
     " " acc., 63, n. 1.  
*Vespere* and *Vesper*, 68, n. 2.  
*Vestrum* different from *vestri*, 44, n. 5, 89.  
*Vetare* w. acc., w. inf., 186, n. 2.  
     " " inf., 138, n.  
     " " *quominus*, 138.  
*Vetus* w. gen., 47, n. 2.  
*Via*, 72, n. 3.  
*Vicinia* aft. adv., 45, n. 2.  
*Vicinus* w. dat., 31 n. 2.  
*Videre* w. acc. w. inf., 178.  
     " " ut, 185.  
*Videri* w. two nom., 13.  
     " used impersonally, 14, n. 2.  
*Vigere* w. abl., 61.  
*Vivere* w. acc., 15, n. 3.  
*Vix* w. *quin*, 137.  
*Vocare* w. two acc., 20.  
*Vocari* w. two nom., 13.  
*Vocative case*, 76.  
     " for nom., 76, n. 4.  
*Voluntas* w. ger. in *di*, 209.  
*Voti*, 52, n. 4.  
*Vovere* w. acc: w. inf., 178.  
  
*Wanting*, v. of, 81.  
*Willingness*, v. of, w. subj. alone, 190.  
*Wishing*, v. of, w. nom. or acc. w. inf., 182.  
     " " " " ut, 182, n. 2.  
*Wonder*, v. of, w. *quod*, 191.  
  
*Yet* w. comp., 86.

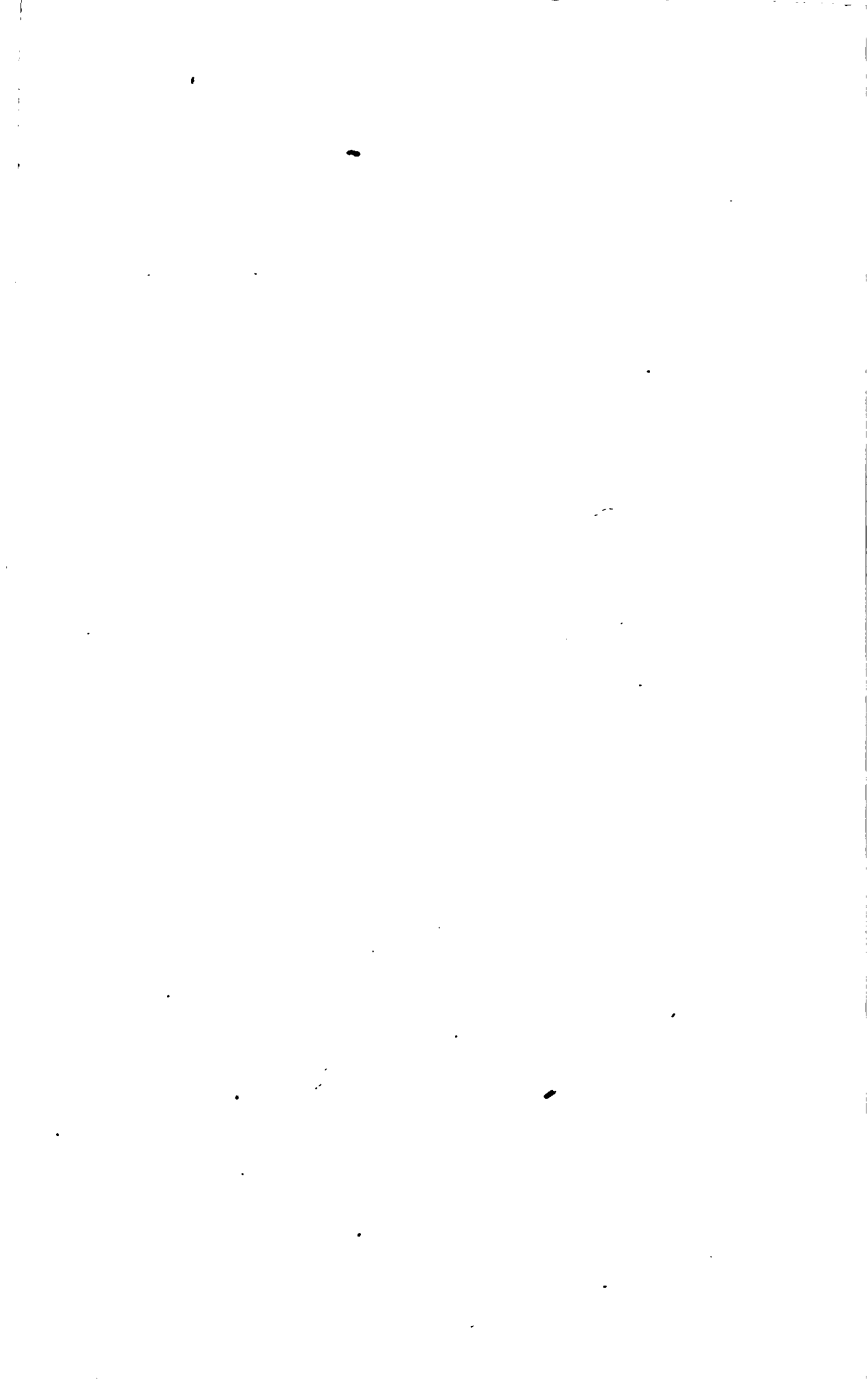
## ADDENDA.

Page 9, line 19, read *obire* for *abire*.

" 148, before *Natu* insert *Nasci* w. two nom., 13.











**This book should be returned to  
the Library on or before the last date  
stamped below.**

**A fine of five cents a day is incurred  
by retaining it beyond the specified  
time.**

**Please return promptly.**

1918 DEC 12





